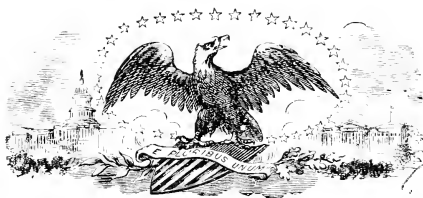




HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES,
FOR
SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

BY
JOSEPH T. DERRY,
PROFESSOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES IN ACADEMY OF RICHMOND COUNTY,
AUGUSTA, GEORGIA.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS.



PHILADELPHIA:
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.
1875.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1875, by

J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

PREFACE.

THIS work is designed as an introductory history. The plan of alternate questions and answers has been adopted, because considered the best arrangement for those pupils who are not sufficiently advanced to judge for themselves in all instances as to what is the correct answer to a question placed at the foot of the page. I have myself often felt the need of a work of this kind in my own school, and it is this need which has prompted me to prepare this history. Great pains have been taken to state accurately all the leading events in the history of our country. The authorities consulted in the preparation of this work are Stephens's "History of the United States," "Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department of the United States," by General Henry Lee, Holmes's "History of the United States," John Esten Cooke's "Life of R. E. Lee," McCabe's "Life of Lee," General Joseph E. Johnston's "Narrative of Military Operations," Greeley's "American Conflict," Draper's "History of the Civil War," and Swinton's "Decisive Battles of the War."

J. T. DERRY.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

	CHAPTER I.	PAGE
Discovery of America		11
	CHAPTER II.	
About the Indians		15
	CHAPTER III.	
Settlement of Virginia		17
	CHAPTER IV.	
Virginia.—Continued		21
	CHAPTER V.	
Settlement of New York by the Dutch.—It becomes a British Colony		25
	CHAPTER VI.	
The Colony of Massachusetts		27
	CHAPTER VII.	
Progress of Events in Virginia.—Wars with the Indians		31
	CHAPTER VIII.	
Settlement of New Hampshire and Connecticut		33
	CHAPTER IX.	
Settlement of Rhode Island		35

	PAGE
CHAPTER X.	
The New England Confederation	38
CHAPTER XI.	
Settlement of Maryland	40
CHAPTER XII.	
Settlement of New Jersey and Delaware	43
CHAPTER XIII.	
Settlement of Pennsylvania	47
CHAPTER XIV.	
Settlement of North Carolina	49
CHAPTER XV.	
Settlement of South Carolina	52
CHAPTER XVI.	
Affairs in Virginia and New York	55
CHAPTER XVII.	
Affairs in New England from 1675 to 1754	59
CHAPTER XVIII.	
Affairs in South Carolina	64
CHAPTER XIX.	
Settlement of Georgia	66
CHAPTER XX.	
The French and Indian War of 1754	71
CHAPTER XXI.	
French and Indian War.—Continued	74
CHAPTER XXII.	
French and Indian War.—Concluded	78
GENERAL REVIEW	80

PART SECOND.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR TO THE
BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Difficulties between the Colonies and the Mother-Country	84

CHAPTER II.

Commencement of the War of the Revolution	88
---	----

CHAPTER III.

War of the Revolution (continued).—Declaration of Independence	94
--	----

CHAPTER IV.

War of the Revolution.—Continued	98
--	----

CHAPTER V.

War of the Revolution.—Continued	103
--	-----

CHAPTER VI.

War of the Revolution.—Continued	107
--	-----

CHAPTER VII.

War of the Revolution.—Continued	112
--	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

War of the Revolution.—Continued	116
--	-----

CHAPTER IX.

War of the Revolution (concluded).—Surrender of Cornwallis, and Peace with England	120
---	-----

CHAPTER

The Formation of the Federal Constitution.—The Election of Washington as President	124
GENERAL REVIEW	130

PART THIRD.

FROM THE ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON TO THE YEAR 1872.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Washington's Administration	139

CHAPTER II.

Administration of John Adams	147
--	-----

CHAPTER III.

Administration of Thomas Jefferson	150
--	-----

CHAPTER IV.

Administration of James Madison	155
---	-----

CHAPTER V.

Madison's Second Term.—War with Great Britain	158
---	-----

CHAPTER VI.

Administration of James Madison (continued).—War with Great Britain (continued)	161
--	-----

CHAPTER VII.

Madison's Administration (concluded).—End of the War with Great Britain	165
--	-----

CHAPTER VIII.

Administration of James Monroe	170
--	-----

CHAPTER IX.

Administration of John Quincy Adams	175
---	-----

CHAPTER X.

Administration of Andrew Jackson	178
--	-----

CHAPTER XI.

	PAGE
Administration of Martin Van Buren	184

CHAPTER XII.

Administrations of Harrison and Tyler	188
---	-----

CHAPTER XIII.

Administration of James K. Polk.—War with Mexico	194
--	-----

CHAPTER XIV.

Administrations of Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore	203
--	-----

CHAPTER XV.

Administration of Franklin Pierce	207
---	-----

GENERAL REVIEW	209
--------------------------	-----

PART FOURTH.

CHAPTER I.

Administration of James Buchanan	223
--	-----

CHAPTER II.

Administration of Abraham Lincoln.—First Year of the War between the States	231
---	-----

CHAPTER III.

Second Year of the War between the States	243
---	-----

CHAPTER IV.

Third Year of the War between the States	265
--	-----

CHAPTER V.

Fourth Year of the War between the States	285
---	-----

CHAPTER VI.

	PAGE
End of the War between the States.—Death of President Lincoln.—	
Administration of Andrew Johnson	312

CHAPTER VII.

Administration of President Grant	327
GENERAL REVIEW	329
CONCLUDING REMARKS	351

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART FIRST.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE CLOSE OF THE
FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

CHAPTER I.

Discovery of America.

Q. OF what two great divisions does the American Continent consist?

A. North America and South America.

Q. What is it sometimes called?

A. The Western Continent.

Q. Had the people of Europe any knowledge of America previous to the year of our Lord 1492?

A. They had not.

Q. By whom was it discovered?

A. By Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in Italy.

Q. What had some Icelanders and Norwegians done towards the close of the tenth century?

A. They had discovered Greenland and the neighboring coasts of North America.

Q. How far south do some suppose that they made discoveries?

A. As far south as Massachusetts Bay.

Q. What name did these Norwegians and Icelanders give to the country which they visited?

A. The name of Vinland.

Q. What can you say of the discoveries of these Northmen?

A. But very few people ever heard of them, and they were soon entirely forgotten.

Q. Had even the learned men of Europe any knowledge of this Hemisphere before its discovery by Columbus?

A. They had not.

Q. To what conclusion had Columbus, as well as other learned men of Europe, arrived?

A. That the earth was round, and that India could be reached by sailing due west.

Q. What had, at this period, become a favorite project of Europeans?

A. To discover a direct passage to India by sea.

Q. Did Columbus set out with a view of discovering a new continent, or of finding a direct route to India?

A. His purpose was to find a direct route to India.

Q. To what Government did he first apply for aid in the prosecution of his enterprise?

A. To the Government of Genoa, his native city.

Q. Did he obtain the assistance which he desired?

A. He did not.

Q. To whom did he next apply?

A. To John II., King of Portugal.

Q. Did he meet with any better success in this application?

A. He did not.

Q. To whom did he send his brother to solicit aid?

A. To Henry VII., King of England.

Q. With what result?

A. He was again disappointed.

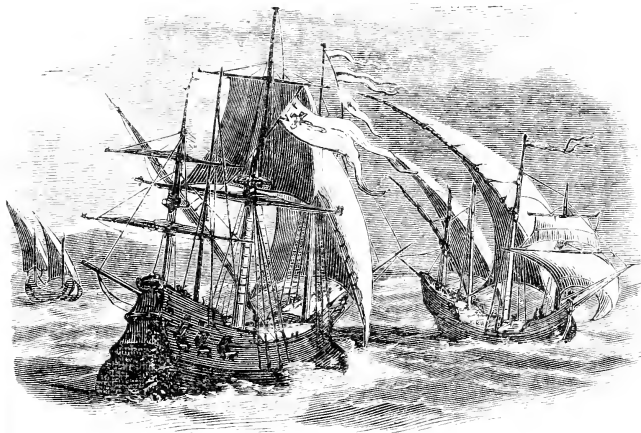
Q. To whom did he next apply?

A. To Ferdinand and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain.

Q. What success attended this latter application?

A. He was furnished with three vessels, which were supplied with provisions for twelve months, and were manned by ninety mariners.

- Q. What was the whole cost of the expedition?
- A. About twenty thousand dollars.
- Q. What were the names of the three vessels that were furnished to Columbus?
- A. Santa Maria, Pinta, and Nina.
- Q. In which one did Columbus sail?
- A. In the Santa Maria, which was the largest.
- Q. From what place did Columbus sail?
- A. From Palos, a port in Spain.
- Q. When did he set sail?
- A. On Friday, the 3d of August, 1492.
- Q. What land did they reach on the 6th of August?
- A. The Canary Islands, where they were detained several weeks on account of injuries received by the Pinta.
- Q. When did the fleet of Columbus leave the Canaries?
- A. On the 6th of September.



THE FLEET OF COLUMBUS.

- Q. How long were they on the voyage?
- A. More than a month.
- Q. When was land discovered?

A. On the morning of the 12th of October, 1492.

Q. What did the land prove to be?

A. One of the Bahama Islands, called by the natives Gu-an-a-han-i.

Q. What name did Columbus give it?

A. San Salvador, which means Holy Saviour.

Q. What other land did Columbus discover?

A. The island of Cuba, which he thought was Japan, and the island of Hayti, which he named Hispaniola, or Little Spain.

Q. How was Columbus received on his return to Spain?

A. With the greatest honors.

Q. What did Columbus discover on a second voyage?

A. Dominica, Porto Rico, Jamaica, and other islands.

Q. Where did he arrive on his third voyage?

A. At the island of Trinidad and the mouth of the Orinoco River.

Q. What did the size of this river indicate?

A. That he had reached a continent.

Q. What was this continent supposed to be?

A. Asia.

Q. Did Columbus ever know that he had discovered a new world?

A. He did not.

Q. What happened to him in the year 1500?

A. He was arrested under a charge of treason, and sent home in chains.

Q. Was he guilty?

A. He was not, and was accordingly set at liberty.

Q. Where and when did he die?

A. At Val-la-do-lid, in Spain, on the 20th of May, 1506, and in the seventy-first year of his age.

Q. After whom was America called?

A. After Americus Vesputius, another navigator, who visited America after its discovery by Columbus, and in 1499 published a map of the coast and a description of the lands which he had visited.

CHAPTER II.

About the Indians.

Q. WHAT name was given by Columbus to the inhabitants of the islands which he visited?

A. The name of Indians.

Q. Why did he call them Indians?

A. Because he supposed that these islands were parts of India. For this reason the islands were called West Indies, and their inhabitants Indians.

Q. What is known of the origin of the Indians?

A. Nothing with certainty.

Q. Where were the most civilized Indian nations found?

A. In Mexico, in Central America, and in the countries of Peru and Chili, in South America.

Q. What can you say of the Indians who lived in the present limits of the United States?

A. They were savages.

Q. What was their chief employment?

A. Hunting and fishing.

Q. Did they pay any attention to agriculture?

A. They paid some slight attention to agriculture.

Q. What can you say of the Indian's knowledge of the useful arts?

A. His knowledge of the useful arts was small. He was ignorant of the plow, the harrow, and the spade, and had no acquaintance with iron.

Q. What were his weapons of war?

A. The bow and arrow, and the tomahawk, which was made of stone.

Q. What is the complexion of the Indians?

A. A reddish-brown or copper color.

Q. What is their character?

A. They are blood-thirsty and revengeful.

Q. What can you say of the Indian women?

A. The Indian women were treated like slaves, and made to perform all the labors of the tent, the field, and the journey.

Q. Did the Indians have a correct knowledge of the true God?

A. The Indians adored many divinities, but had an indistinct idea of a Supreme God, whom they called the Great Spirit.

Q. How did they regard death?

A. They regarded death as simply a migration to the happy hunting-grounds.

Q. Did they have any knowledge of letters and the art of writing?

A. Letters and the art of writing were unknown to them, but they used pictorial emblems to convey information.

Q. What is said of their difficulties with the whites?

A. Their quarrels with the whites sometimes originated from mere caprice, but were often provoked by injustice.

Q. How did they take revenge?

A. By an indiscriminate slaughter of men, women, and children.

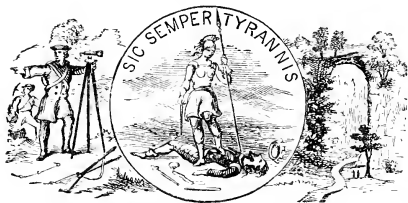
Q. Was their hostility able to prevent the settlement of the country by the whites?

A. In spite of all their hostility the settlements of the whites steadily increased, and the Indian tribes were gradually pushed back beyond the Mississippi River.

Q. What will probably be their destiny?

A. In the course of a few generations the Indians will probably become extinct.

CHAPTER III.

Settlement of Virginia.

SEAL OF VIRGINIA.

Q. How many years was it after the discovery of America by Columbus before the English succeeded in making their first permanent settlement on the continent?

A. One hundred and fifteen years.

Q. What European nations made settlements in America previous to the English?

A. The Spaniards, the Portuguese, and the French.

Q. What portions of America were settled by the Spaniards?

A. Mexico, Florida, Central America, and the greater part of South America.

Q. What portion of America was colonized by the Portuguese?

A. That part of South America which now constitutes the Empire of Brazil

Q. What can you say of French settlements?

A. The French commenced a settlement in Nova Scotia two years before the first permanent English settlement, and several years afterwards established colonies in Canada, and also in Louisiana, where they built the city of New Orleans.

Q. On what ground did Great Britain claim the exclusive right to plant colonies in North America?

A. On the ground of having first discovered this part of the continent.

Q. Was England's claim of priority of discovery well founded?

A. It was: for in 1497 John Cabot, a Venetian, in the service of Henry VII., King of England, discovered the mainland of North America.

Q. How long was this before Columbus landed on the mainland of South America?

A. Fourteen months.

Q. What can you say of the first attempts of the English to found colonies?

A. The first attempts of the English to plant colonies in North America failed.

Q. When and where was the first permanent English settlement established?

A. In the year 1607, at Jamestown, on James River, in the present State of Virginia.

Q. After whom was the James River called?

A. After James I., King of England.

Q. What name was given to the Colony?

A. It was called *Virginia*, in honor of *Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen*, during whose reign the charter had been granted for colonizing all the country between the parallels of 33° and 45° north latitude, on the coast of North America.

Q. What was the number of settlers?

A. The number of settlers was at first only one hundred and five persons. Ten of them were laborers, and they were all unmarried men.

Q. Who were the officers of the Colony?

A. The officers consisted of seven members of Council. They were Bartholomew Gosnold, Captain John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliff, John Martin, and George Kendall.

Q. Who was made President or Governor of the Colony?

A. Edward Wingfield.

Q. What of the season after their arrival?

A. It proved very unhealthy, and nearly half their number died before winter.

Q. What member of Council was among those that died?

A. Bartholomew Gosnold, one of the ablest members of the Council.

Q. What is said of the native inhabitants, or Indians?

A. The Indians were numerous in the neighborhood of Jamestown, and were sometimes hostile.

Q. What of Captain Newport?

A. Captain Newport, the commander of the vessels in which the settlers had come over, after staying a short while, sailed for England.

Q. How did he leave the Colony?

A. He left them in a very destitute condition.

Q. What added to the misfortunes of the settlers?

A. In addition to their other misfortunes they quarreled among themselves. They excluded Captain Smith from the Council; deposed Mr. Wingfield, and put Mr. Ratcliff in his place.

Q. As their condition continued to grow worse, what did they finally do?

A. They gave the management of affairs to Captain Smith, who by his skill and courage soon restored order and placed the Colony on the road to prosperity.

Q. What can you say of Captain Smith?

A. He was a man who had met with many adventures. He had served in the armies of Holland and Austria, had been a prisoner among the Turks, and had traveled through most of the principal countries of Europe. After all his travels he returned to England, his native country, just in time to join the companies which were forming for the settlement of Virginia.

Q. What was one of his first steps after taking charge of the affairs of the Colony?

A. He made treaties with the Indians, and that quieted the fears of the settlers.

Q. As soon as the Colony became tranquil, what did he determine to do?

A. He determined to set out on a voyage of discovery.

Q. Up what river did he go?

A. With a party of men he went up the Chickahominy River.

Q. Of what river is the Chickahominy a branch?

A. It is a branch of the James.

Q. What happened when they had proceeded about thirty miles above the junction of these two rivers?

A. They were attacked by Indians; Smith's companions were slain, and he was himself made a prisoner.

Q. To whom did the Indians carry him?

A. To Powhatan, their King.

Q. What did Powhatan determine to do with him?

A. He determined to put him to death.

Q. What was then done with Smith?

A. His arms were tied behind his back, his head was placed upon a log, and Powhatan seized his club, with the intention of killing the prisoner himself.

Q. What happened just as he was about to strike the fatal blow?

A. Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan, a girl of about twelve years, sprang forward, and, throwing her arms around the prisoner's neck, begged her father to spare his life.

Q. What did Powhatan do?

A. His daughter's tears and entreaties moved him to compassion, and he spared the prisoner's life.

Q. What else did Powhatan do?

A. He made a treaty with Smith, by which he promised to be a friend to the English, and permitted Smith to return to his friends at Jamestown.

Q. How long had Smith been absent?

A. He had been absent about seven weeks.

Q. What happened soon after this?

A. Powhatan again became angry with the whites, and laid a plot to destroy them.

Q. Who informed Captain Smith of his design?

A. Pocahontas informed Captain Smith of the plot, and the Colony was saved.

Q. What was done through the influence of Captain Smith?

A. Peace was once more made.

CHAPTER IV.

Virginia.—Continued.

Q. WHAT happened in the year 1609?

A. Smith was seriously wounded by the explosion of a bag of powder, and was compelled to return to England for his health.

Q. Did he ever go back to Jamestown?

A. He never returned to Jamestown.

Q. What did he do in the year 1614?

A. He sailed in the year 1614 for the coasts north of Virginia.

Q. What can you say of his voyage?

A. His voyage was prosperous, and he explored and made a map of the coast from the Penobscot River to Cape Cod.

Q. What name did he give to the country thus explored by him?

A. He called it New England, by which name it has been called ever since.

Q. When did Captain Smith die?

A. In the year 1631, in London, at the age of fifty-two.

Q. What happened in the year 1608?

A. In the latter part of 1608 two hundred immigrants came over to Virginia.

Q. What was the population of the Colony at the time of Smith's departure from Jamestown?

A. About five hundred.

Q. What happened after Smith's departure?

A. After the departure of Smith the Indians became hostile. They attacked the settlers and compelled them all to seek refuge in Jamestown.

Q. What other troubles had they ?

A. Provisions became scarce, and many died for want of food.

Q. To what number were the settlers reduced ?

A. The total number of settlers was now reduced to about sixty.

Q. What did they now determine to do ?

A. They determined to abandon the settlement.

Q. What happened at this juncture ?

A. A vessel with crew and passengers, who had wintered in the West Indies, arrived at Jamestown.

Q. Did they now give up the intention to abandon Jamestown ?

A. They did not, but had actually set sail, when the arrival of Lord Delaware with a supply of provisions and with more immigrants caused them to change their purpose and return to Jamestown.

Q. Who now became Governor of the Colony ?

A. Lord Delaware now became Governor.

Q. What is said of his administration ?

A. Under his administration the Colony became prosperous.

Q. What became of Lord Delaware ?

A. His health gave way, and he went back to England. He died at sea, when returning to Virginia, in the year 1617, near the bay which now bears his name.

Q. Who succeeded Lord Delaware as Governor ?

A. Soon after Lord Delaware's return to England, Sir Thomas Dale was appointed Governor.

Q. When was this ?

A. In May, 1611.

Q. Who came out as Governor in September of the same year ?

A. Sir Thomas Gates, who brought over six ships, three hundred immigrants, and a large amount of provisions.

Q. What else did Sir Thomas Gates bring over ?

A. He brought over a number of cows, goats, and swine, which were the first introduced into the New World.

Q. What happened in the year 1613?

A. Pocahontas, who had been such a great friend of the whites, was stolen by a party of white men, led by Captain Argall, and a large sum was demanded for her ransom.

Q. What did Powhatan do?

A. He refused to pay the ransom, and began to get ready for war.

Q. How was the war prevented?

A. A young Englishman, named Rolfe, fell in love with Pocahontas, and proposed to marry her. Powhatan consented. She embraced the Christian religion, was baptized, and soon afterwards was married.

Q. What became of Pocahontas?

A. She accompanied her husband on a visit to England, where she died at the age of twenty-two, leaving one son, named Thomas.

Q. What was done by the same Captain Argall who captured Pocahontas?

A. He destroyed the French settlements in Nova Scotia, and asserted the English claim.

Q. Who succeeded Sir Thomas Gates in 1614?

A. He was succeeded by Sir Thomas Dale, who continued in office for two years.

Q. What plant began to be cultivated in Virginia in the year 1614?

A. Tobacco, a plant unknown to Europeans until Columbus met with it among the natives of Cuba.

Q. Who opposed its use?

A. King James of England; but, notwithstanding his opposition, it soon became a regular article of commerce.

Q. Whence did this plant derive its name?

A. From the island of Tobago, one of the West Indies.

Q. Who became Governor of Virginia in 1616?

A. Mr. George Yeardley.

Q. How long did he continue in office?

A. He continued in office about one year.

Q. Who was his successor?

A. He was succeeded by Captain Argall, whose rule was so oppressive that the colonists requested his removal.

Q. Who now became Governor?

A. Yeardley was again sent out as Governor, and under his rule the Colony advanced rapidly.

Q. When and where did the first Colonial Assembly or Legislature meet?

A. On the 19th of June, 1619, at Jamestown.

Q. What can you say of this Assembly?

A. It was the first legislative body consisting of deputies elected by the people that ever assembled in this country.

Q. When was negro slavery introduced into Virginia?

A. In the year 1620.

Q. By whom?

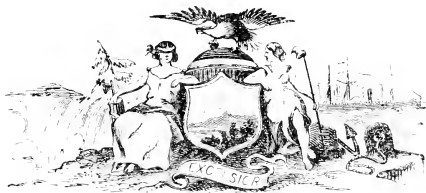
A. By some Dutch traders, who brought twenty negroes to Jamestown and sold them to the colonists.

Q. What was the population of Virginia by the close of the year 1620?

A. Upwards of two thousand.

CHAPTER V.

Settlement of New York by the Dutch.—It becomes a British Colony.



SEAL OF NEW YORK.

Q. WHEN was the island of Manhattan, on which the city of New York now stands, first discovered?

A. In the year 1609.

Q. By whom?

A. By Henry Hudson, an Englishman, who was in the service of the Dutch East India Company.

Q. What river did he ascend?

A. He ascended the Hudson River, which derived its name from him.

Q. In consequence of his discoveries, what did the Dutch do?

A. They laid claim to the country, and in the year 1610 erected a fort near where the city of Albany now stands.

Q. Where else did they commence a settlement?

A. On the island of Manhattan.

Q. What name did they give to this settlement?

A. They called it New Amsterdam.

Q. What name did they give to the country which they claimed?

A. They named it New Netherlands.

Q. Who also laid claim to this region?

A. The English.

Q. On what ground?

A. They claimed it on the ground of the discovery of North America by Cabot, and for the reason also that Hudson was himself an Englishman.

Q. Whom did the English send against the Dutch in 1613?

A. Captain Argall, who subdued New Amsterdam, and made the Dutch Governor promise to pay tribute.

Q. Did the Governor keep his promise?

A. He did not, but in 1614 threw off the English yoke and refused to pay tribute.

Q. For how many years did the Colony remain undisturbed by the English?

A. The English did not molest the Dutch again for fifty years.

Q. What is said of the progress of the Dutch?

A. Their progress was not rapid, but their settlements were gradually extended from the Connecticut River to the Delaware.

Q. With whom did they have frequent disputes?

A. They had frequent disputes with their English neighbors, but sometimes received assistance from them in their contests with the Indians.

Q. Against what did they have to contend on the Delaware?

A. They were obliged to contend against the claims of both the Swedes and the English.

Q. What was done in 1651 by Peter Stuyvesant, the Dutch Governor?

A. He subdued the Swedish settlers on the Delaware, and took possession of their settlements.

Q. What happened in 1664?

A. In 1664 New Amsterdam was seized by Colonel Nicholas for the Duke of York.

Q. Did the inhabitants make any resistance?

A. They did not make any resistance.

Q. Who now took possession of the Dutch Province of New Netherlands?

A. The English, who gave to the country the name of New York, which name they also gave to New Amsterdam.

CHAPTER VI.

The Colony of Massachusetts.



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

Q. WHEN was the first permanent Colony planted in Massachusetts?

A. In the year 1620, at Plymouth.

Q. By whom was this settlement made?

A. By a religious sect called Puritans.

Q. Why was this name given to them?

A. On account of their rigid observance of the forms of their religion.

Q. By what other name are they known?

A. By the name of Pilgrims.

Q. Why were they called Pilgrims?

A. Because of the fact that they had been so often obliged to change their homes.

Q. What caused them to frequently change their place of abode?

A. Religious persecution.

Q. What did they seek in America?

A. They sought freedom to worship God according to the dictates of their own conscience.

Q. When did they set sail from England?

A. In July, 1620, in two vessels, the *Speedwell* and the *Mayflower*.

Q. What were they obliged to do?

A. It was found that the *Speedwell* was not seaworthy, and they were obliged to put back for repairs.

Q. When did they sail again?

A. On the 5th of August, but were compelled to put back the second time.

Q. Where did they abandon the *Speedwell*?

A. At Portsmouth.

Q. When did the *Mayflower* finally set sail from Plymouth?

A. On the 6th of September, with one hundred and one persons on board.

Q. How long was the voyage?

A. Sixty days.

Q. Where did they first come in sight of land?

A. Off Cape Cod, and on the 10th of November they cast anchor.

Q. What kind of government did they adopt?

A. They adopted a purely democratic form of government, which was drawn up in writing and agreed to before landing.

Q. Who was chosen Governor?

A. Mr. John Carver.

Q. How were several days spent?

A. In searching for a suitable place to land.

Q. When did they land?

A. On the 22d of December, 1620.

Q. By what name did they call the place where they established their settlement?

A. They called it Plymouth, after the place from which they sailed in England.

Q. Were the Puritans industrious?

A. They were industrious and spent no time in idleness; they immediately went to work felling trees, and on the third day began to build.

Q. What can you say of the winter?

A. The winter was very severe, and their sufferings were great.

Q. What was the condition of the Colony by the 1st of April, 1621?

A. All but forty-six of those who had landed were dead. Among the dead were Governor Carver, his wife and son.

Q. With whom was a treaty of friendship made a short time before the death of Governor Carver?

A. A treaty was made with Massasoit, an Indian chief.

Q. Of what tribe was Massasoit chief?

A. He was chief of the Wampanoags.

Q. What did Massasoit teach the settlers?

A. He taught them how to cultivate maize, or Indian corn.

Q. Who was chosen Governor after the death of Carver?

A. William Bradford.

Q. How long was he Governor?

A. Nearly forty years in all.

Q. What happened in November, 1621?

A. A ship arrived with thirty-five immigrants.

Q. What happened in 1623?

A. The Pilgrims became involved in an Indian war.

Q. What plot was laid by the Indians?

A. The Indians formed a plot to exterminate the English.

Q. Who revealed the plot to the English?

A. Massasoit, the friendly chief.

Q. What did the information, communicated by him, enable the English to do?

A. It enabled them to defeat the Indians.

Q. What happened in 1624?

A. Other immigrants arrived, bringing with them cattle, swine, poultry, clothing, and provisions.

Q. What is said of the progress of Plymouth Colony?

A. The progress of the Colony was slow. At the end of ten years the number of the settlers was only three hundred.

Q. Who made a settlement at Salem in 1628?

A. John Endicott, with about one hundred colonists.

Q. When was a charter granted for the Colony of Massachusetts?

A. In the year 1629.

Q. How many settlers soon after embarked for the new Colony?

A. About three hundred.

Q. Who was elected the first Governor of Massachusetts?

A. John Winthrop.

Q. Where were new settlements made?

A. At Charlestown, Dorchester, Watertown, Lynn, Roxbury, and Boston.

Q. What was the government at first?

A. It was at first a pure democracy.

Q. Did the Colony at Plymouth have any political connection with the other settlements in Massachusetts?

A. It had no political connection with the other settlements of Massachusetts for several years.



SEAL OF MASSACHUSETTS.

CHAPTER VII.

Progress of Events in Virginia.—Wars with the Indians.

Q. WHO succeeded Yeardley as Governor of Virginia in 1621 ?

A. Sir Francis Wyatt.

Q. How many settlements were there in Virginia at this time ?

A. There were about eighty settlements, and the population of the Colony was not less than three thousand.

Q. What of the Colony at this time ?

A. The Colony was in a very flourishing condition.

Q. What terrible and unexpected calamity suddenly befell the settlers of Virginia ?

A. The Indians treacherously fell upon the whites, and slew three hundred of them in a single hour.

Q. What was the design of the Indians ?

A. They intended to exterminate the Colony.

Q. What prevented the plot of the Indians from being entirely successful ?

A. The plot was revealed to the English by a converted Indian, and so a majority of the settlers were enabled to find refuge in Jamestown.

Q. What followed ?

A. The whites lost all confidence in the Indians, and waged a war of extermination against them.

Q. When did Sir George Yeardley become Governor again ?

A. In 1626.

Q. What happened the following year ?

A. Sir George Yeardley died, and the Council elected Francis West, Governor in his place.

Q. Who succeeded West ?

A. Sir John Harvey.

Q. When was Sir William Berkeley appointed Governor?

A. In 1642.

Q. What happened in 1644?

A. The Indians again attacked the frontier settlements, and killed about three hundred of the inhabitants.

Q. What followed this massacre?

A. A war, which lasted about two years, by which the power of the Indians was completely broken.

Q. What were the Indians compelled to do?

A. They were compelled to make a treaty, by which they gave up their lands, and retired farther into the wilderness.

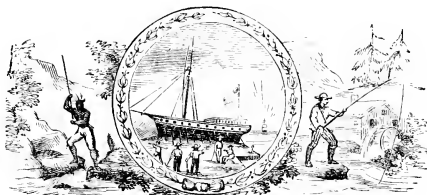
Q. What was the state of the Colony after the restoration of peace?

A. The Colony prospered greatly; its trade increased, and more than thirty ships found employment in exporting its products.

Q. What was the population of Virginia in 1648?

A. It was twenty thousand.

CHAPTER VIII.

Settlement of New Hampshire and Connecticut.

SEAL OF NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Q. WHEN were the first permanent settlements made in New Hampshire?

A. In November, 1629.

Q. Where were these settlements?

A. One of them was near the site of Portsmouth, and the other at the present town of Dover.

Q. What happened in the winter of 1635–36?

A. Captain John Mason, the founder of New Hampshire, died, and for many years afterwards the Colony was neglected.

Q. What happened in 1638?

A. A new settlement was made at Exeter, by John Wheelwright and some followers, who came from Massachusetts.

Q. What other settlement was made in 1640?

A. A settlement was made at Hampton.

Q. When was the first settlement made in Connecticut?

A. In 1633, near Hartford.

Q. By whom was this settlement made?

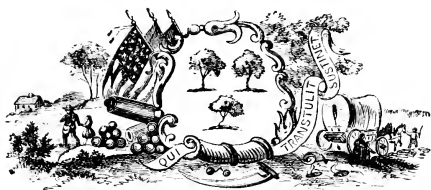
A. By the Dutch.

Q. What did the Dutch do in 1634?

A. In 1634 the Dutch yielded their claim.

Q. What was done by John Winthrop in 1635?

A. He erected a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and called it Saybrook.



SEAL OF CONNECTICUT.

Q. How many emigrants from Massachusetts came into Connecticut in 1636?

A. About one hundred.

Q. Where did they settle?

A. Some settled at Hartford, some founded Springfield, and others formed a settlement at Wethersfield.

Q. When and by whom was the city of New Haven founded?

A. In 1637, by Theophilus Eaton, who was elected Governor.

Q. How long did he hold this office?

A. For more than twenty years.

Q. How many separate political communities were there at this time in the territory now known as the State of Connecticut?

A. There were three: Saybrook, the Connecticut Colony, and the Colony of New Haven.

CHAPTER IX.

Settlement of Rhode Island.

SEAL OF RHODE ISLAND.

Q. WHEN and by whom was the Colony of Rhode Island founded?

A. In 1636, by Roger Williams.

Q. Who was Roger Williams?

A. He was a native of Wales, and a minister of the Baptist denomination.

Q. Where did he settle when he first came to America?

A. At Salem, in Massachusetts.

Q. Why did he leave Massachusetts?

A. Because he was persecuted on account of his religious opinions.

Q. By whom was he persecuted?

A. He was persecuted by the Puritans, the very people who had themselves left England that they might enjoy religious liberty.

Q. For how many weeks did Roger Williams roam about seeking for a suitable place to found a settlement?

A. He wandered about for fourteen weeks.

Q. Who at times gave him shelter and protection?

A. The Indians.

Q. How did it happen that he was on friendly terms with them?

A. Because he had taken particular pains to become acquainted with the language, customs, and manners of the Indians, so that he might be the better able to preach to them the gospel of Christ.

Q. Where did Williams at last find a place which he thought would suit?

A. On the Pawtucket River, which is now called the Seekonk.

Q. From whom did he obtain permission to occupy the land which he desired to settle?

A. From Ousamequin, an Indian chief, in whose territory the place lay.

Q. What did Williams then do?

A. He built him a house with his own hands.

Q. By whom was he now joined?

A. By a few friends.

Q. What did Governor Winslow, of the Plymouth Colony, do when he heard of Williams's settlement?

A. He admonished Williams to leave.

Q. Did Williams and his friends heed this admonition?

A. They did, and set out again in search of a resting-place.

Q. Where did they again begin a settlement?

A. Near the mouth of the Moshassuck River.

Q. Were they again disturbed?

A. They were not molested again.

Q. What name did Roger Williams give to his settlement?

A. He called it Providence, in gratitude for God's merciful providence to him in his distress.

Q. In whose territory was this place?

A. It was in the territory of Canonicus, the chief of the Narraganset Indians.

Q. For what consideration did Canonicus grant Williams the land for his settlement?

A. In consideration of kindness and good will alone.

Q. What was Williams's design in establishing this settlement?

A. His design was to establish a colony where every man might worship God according to the dictates of his own conscience.

Q. When did his wife and children join him?

A. In the summer of 1636.

Q. By whom was the population of the settlement soon increased?

A. By emigrants from Massachusetts and from England.

Q. What happened in 1638?

A. Some persons who had been banished from Massachusetts on account of their religious opinions formed a new settlement at New Port, on the island of Rhode Island.

Q. Through whose influence did they obtain permission from the Indians to settle there?

A. Through the influence of Roger Williams.

Q. In 1663 what did Williams succeed in obtaining from Charles II., King of England?

A. He succeeded in obtaining a charter for the government of these two settlements.

Q. What title was given to the Colony by the charter?

A. The title of "The English Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations in New England."

Q. For how long a time did this charter remain the foundation of the government of the people of Rhode Island?

A. For nearly two hundred years.

CHAPTER X.

The New England Confederation.

Q. WHAT war broke out in 1637?

A. A war with the Pequods, a very powerful tribe of Indians.

Q. Who projected this war?

A. Cassacus, the leading chief of the Pequods.

Q. What was the intention of Cassacus?

A. His intention was to exterminate all the English settlements.

Q. Through whose influence did the English secure the friendship of the Mohegan and Narraganset chiefs?

A. Through the influence of Roger Williams.

Q. What Colonies undertook the war against the Pequods?

A. The Colonies of Connecticut and Massachusetts.

Q. Who took command of the united forces of Connecticut and Massachusetts?

A. Captain Mason, an officer of the Connecticut troops.

Q. Where did the Pequods assemble their forces?

A. In their strongest fort, on the Mystic River.

Q. What was the result of the battle that was fought here on the 20th of May, 1637?

A. The Pequods were utterly defeated, their fort was destroyed, and their wigwams burned.

Q. What was the loss of the Indians?

A. Seven hundred of them were killed, and two hundred were captured. Most of the captured were women and children.

Q. What was done with the captives?

A. They were reduced to slavery.

Q. What became of Cassacus?

A. He fled to the Mohawks, and was afterwards assassinated, either by them or some of his own men.

Q. What vessel was built at Marblehead, in Massachusetts, in 1636?

A. The first American slave-ship, which was called the *Desire*.

Q. When was the first cargo of African slaves brought into Massachusetts?

A. In May, 1638, by the *Desire*.

Q. What institution of learning was founded at Cambridge, Massachusetts, in 1638?

A. A college, which now bears the name of Harvard University.

Q. What was done in 1643?

A. A Confederation was formed between the Colonies of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven.

Q. Why was the Colony of Rhode Island excluded from this union?

A. On account of its religion.

Q. What title was assumed for the Confederation?

A. The title of the Confederation was "The United Colonies of New England."

Q. When were the Colonies of New Haven and Connecticut united under the general name of Connecticut?

A. In the year 1662.

Q. What was the entire population of the New England Confederation at this time?

A. It was something more than one hundred thousand.

CHAPTER XI.

Settlement of Maryland.

SEAL OF MARYLAND.

Q. WHEN were trading-posts first established in the country now known as Maryland?

A. In 1621, by Virginia settlers.

Q. Who endeavored to monopolize this trade?

A. William Clayborne, the agent of a company formed in England.

Q. Who visited Virginia in 1628 with the design of establishing a colony somewhere within its limits?

A. Sir George Calvert, whose title was Lord Baltimore.

Q. Why did he not settle in Virginia?

A. Because the government of Virginia was intolerant towards the religion of the Roman Catholic Church, of which he was a member.

Q. What did he do in 1629?

A. In 1629 he explored the country lying on the Chesapeake Bay.

Q. What did he do afterwards?

A. He went to England and applied for a charter, which was finally obtained.

Q. What prevented the execution of his purpose?

A. His death.

Q. Who carried out the purpose for which he obtained the charter?

A. His son and heir, Cecil Calvert, whose title was also Lord Baltimore.

Q. What is said of this charter?

A. It was the most liberal of all the original grants by the Crown to the founders of settlements in America.

Q. What rights did it secure to the colonists?

A. It secured to them all the essential rights of self-government, and contained a guaranty against taxation by England.

Q. What was one of the leading objects of Lord Baltimore in establishing this Colony?

A. It was to furnish an asylum for the persecuted of all Christian churches.

Q. What was the Colony called?

A. It was called Maryland, in honor of Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I., King of England.

Q. Who came over from England in November, 1633?

A. Leonard Calvert, the brother of Cecil, with about two hundred immigrants.

Q. Who were these immigrants?

A. They were mostly Roman Catholic gentlemen with their servants.

Q. What name was given to the town which they built?

A. St. Mary's.

Q. What course was pursued towards the natives?

A. The settlers pursued a kind and liberal course towards the natives.

Q. With what did Calvert supply the natives?

A. He supplied them with hoes, axes, clothes, and knives.

Q. Who raised a rebellion in 1635?

A. William Clayborne, whose license to trade with the Indians had been made void by Lord Baltimore's charter.

Q. What can you say of this rebellion?

A. It was suppressed; Clayborne's men were taken prisoners, but he himself escaped to Virginia.

Q. What did Clayborne do in 1642?

A. He returned to Maryland and instigated the Indians to hostilities; but this trouble was soon suppressed.

Q. What did Clayborne do in 1643?

A. He raised another rebellion, which kept the Colony in a state of confusion for three years.

Q. What was the Governor of Maryland obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to take refuge in Virginia.

Q. What became of the public records?

A. They were either lost or destroyed.

Q. When was the lawful government restored?

A. In the year 1646.

Q. What did the government do upon its restoration?

A. It passed an act of amnesty and pardoned all offenders.

Q. When was the rightful government of Maryland again overthrown?

A. In 1652.

Q. When was it again fully restored?

A. In 1660.

CHAPTER XII.

Settlement of New Jersey and Delaware.

SEAL OF NEW JERSEY.

Q. WHO made the first settlements in New Jersey?

A. The Danes, in 1622.

Q. WHERE did they make settlements?

A. Along the Delaware River, and also at Bergen.

Q. WHAT did the Dutch do in 1623?

A. They built a fort on the east side of the Delaware, to which they gave the name of Nassau.

Q. WHEN did the English make an attempt at colonization?

A. In 1640.

Q. BY whom were they opposed?

A. By the Swedes and Dutch.

Q. WITH what result?

A. The English settlement was broken up.

Q. WHAT did Charles II., King of England, do in 1664?

A. He acquired the Dutch Colony of New Netherlands, and made a grant of it to his brother, the Duke of York.

Q. WHAT territory was embraced in this grant?

A. The whole territory lying between the Connecticut River and the Delaware.

Q. What grant was made by the Duke of York to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret?

A. A grant of the territory which now constitutes the State of New Jersey.

Q. Why was it called New Jersey?

A. It was called New Jersey as a compliment to Sir George Carteret, who had bravely defended the island of Jersey during the Civil War in England.

Q. Where had settlements already been made?

A. At Elizabeth and one or two other places, under licenses from the Governor of New York.

Q. Who was the first Governor of New Jersey?

A. Philip Carteret, brother of Sir George Carteret.

Q. By whom was he succeeded in 1672?

A. By a son of Sir George Carteret.

Q. What happened in 1673?

A. The Dutch recovered New York and New Jersey, but soon afterwards restored them to the English.

Q. What did the Duke of York then do?

A. He had both Provinces of New York and New Jersey united into one.

Q. Who was appointed Governor?

A. Sir Edmund Andros.

Q. What of Sir Edmund Andros?

A. He was a tyrant, and was detested by the people.

Q. What did Lord Berkeley do in 1674?

A. He sold his share of New Jersey to Edward Byllinge, an English Quaker.

Q. To whom did Byllinge transfer his claim?

A. To William Penn, and New Jersey was divided between Penn and Carteret, Penn taking West Jersey, and Carteret East Jersey.

Q. Who settled Burlington, in West Jersey, in 1677?

A. Four hundred Quakers.

Q. When were East and West Jersey reunited?

A. In the year 1702, and New Jersey was placed under one government with New York.

Q. When did New Jersey become a separate Colony again?

A. In 1738.

Q. Who was the first Governor under this arrangement?

A. Lewis Morris.

Q. What college was founded in 1746?

A. The College at Princeton, which was under the control of the General Assembly of the Presbyterian Church.



SEAL OF DELAWARE.

Q. From what did Delaware derive its name?

A. From the river and bay which form its eastern boundary.

Q. From whom did the river and bay derive their name?

A. From Lord Delaware, one of the early Governors of Virginia.

Q. Who made the first attempt to settle this section of country?

A. The Dutch, in 1632, near where Lewistown now stands.

Q. What became of this settlement?

A. A quarrel arose between the settlers and the Indians, and the little Colony was utterly exterminated.

Q. When and by whom was the first permanent European settlement made in Delaware?

A. In 1638, by the Swedes and Finns.

Q. Where was this settlement made?

A. Near the present city of Wilmington.

Q. What name did they give to their settlement?

A. They called it Christiana, in honor of the infant Queen of Sweden.

Q. What was the Colony itself called ?

A. It was called New Sweden.

Q. When did the new Colony fall under the dominion of the Dutch ?

A. In 1655.

Q. When did the English take possession of it ?

A. In 1664, when they also took possession of the Colony of New Netherlands.

Q. To whom was New Sweden transferred in 1682 ?

A. To William Penn.

Q. What name was now given to it ?

A. The name of "The Lower Counties of Delaware."

Q. Until what year did these Swedish settlements remain a part of Pennsylvania ?

A. Until the year 1690.

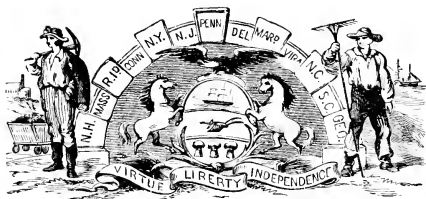
Q. What did the deputies to the Legislative Assembly of Pennsylvania from these "Lower Counties" then do ?

A. They formed a separate Legislature for themselves, and Delaware became a separate Colony.

Q. Did William Penn approve of this separation ?

A. He did.

CHAPTER XIII.

Settlement of Pennsylvania.

SEAL OF PENNSYLVANIA.

Q. BY whom were the first European settlements made in what is now the State of Pennsylvania?

A. By the Swedes, soon after their arrival on the Delaware, in 1638.

Q. In what part of Pennsylvania were these Swedish settlements?

A. Along the Upper Delaware.

Q. Under whose dominion did they fall in 1655?

A. Under the dominion of the Dutch.

Q. Who took possession of them in 1664?

A. The English Duke of York.

Q. To whom did Charles II., King of England, afterwards grant all that section of country now known as Pennsylvania?

A. He granted it to William Penn.

Q. What name did Penn propose for the country?

A. He proposed to call it Sylvania, which means "Woodland."

Q. But what did the King call it?

A. He called it Pennsylvania, which means "Penn's Woodland."

Q. To what sect of Christians did William Penn belong?

A. To a sect styled by themselves Friends, but called by the world Quakers.

Q. Why did Penn wish to settle in America?

A. That he and his brethren might be free from the annoyances to which they were subject in England.

Q. When did the first immigrants arrive?

A. In May, 1681.

Q. When did Penn himself come over?

A. In 1682.

Q. With whom did he make treaties of friendship and good will?

A. With the various tribes of Indians in the neighborhood.

Q. How did Penn promise to treat the Indians?

A. He promised to treat them kindly.

Q. Did he keep this promise?

A. He did; and it is said that no Quaker was ever killed by an Indian.

Q. Where did Penn begin to build a city?

A. On a tract of land lying between the Schuylkill and Delaware Rivers.

Q. By what name was the city called?

A. It was called Philadelphia.

Q. What can you say of the growth of the city?

A. It grew very rapidly: in three years it had more than six hundred houses, and the Colony had a population of eight or nine thousand.

CHAPTER XIV.

Settlement of North Carolina.

SEAL OF NORTH CAROLINA.

Q. WHEN was the coast of the Carolinas first explored by the French?

A. In 1563.

Q. Why did they call the country Carolina?

A. They called it Carolina in honor of Charles IX., King of France.

Q. Is there much resemblance between the names Charles and Carolina?

A. There is very little resemblance between them; but the Latin name for Charles is Carolus, and it is from Carolus that Carolina is derived.

Q. What became of the French settlements?

A. They were all soon abandoned.

Q. When did Sir Walter Raleigh attempt a settlement near the mouth of the Roanoke River, in North Carolina?

A. In 1585.

Q. What can you say of this settlement?

A. It was the first attempt by the English to settle within the present limits of the United States.

Q. How did the attempt result?

A. It resulted in a complete failure. It was many years before another attempt was made to colonize this region.

Q. What happened between the years 1640 and 1643?

A. Numbers of persons from Virginia settled that portion of North Carolina lying next to Virginia.

Q. Who claimed jurisdiction over the settlements?

A. Governor Berkeley, of Virginia.

Q. What name did he give to the Colony?

A. He called it Albemarle, in honor of the Duke of Albemarle.

Q. Whom did he appoint as Governor?

A. William Drummond.

Q. To whom was the whole country between the thirtieth and thirty-sixth degrees of north latitude conveyed by Charles II., King of England, in 1663?

A. To eight noblemen, who were joint proprietors, with full power to settle and govern.

Q. What was done under this charter in the year 1665?

A. A Colony was planted near the mouth of the Cape Fear River, to which the name of Clarendon was given.

Q. Who was made Governor of the Colony?

A. Sir John Yeamans.

Q. How many separate Colonies were thus established in the limits of North Carolina?

A. Two: Albemarle and Clarendon, each having its own Governor.

Q. What did this arrangement occasion?

A. It occasioned considerable trouble.

Q. When were the Colonies of Albemarle and Clarendon united under one government?

A. In the year 1670.

Q. What was the Colony now called?

A. It was called North Carolina.

Q. What can you say of the progress of the Colony between the years 1670 and 1695?

A. Its progress was slow, owing to bad government and frequent revolts.

Q. Who became Governor in 1695?

A. John Archdale, a Quaker.

Q. What did he succeed in doing?

A. He succeeded in restoring comparative quiet.

Q. What happened in 1705?

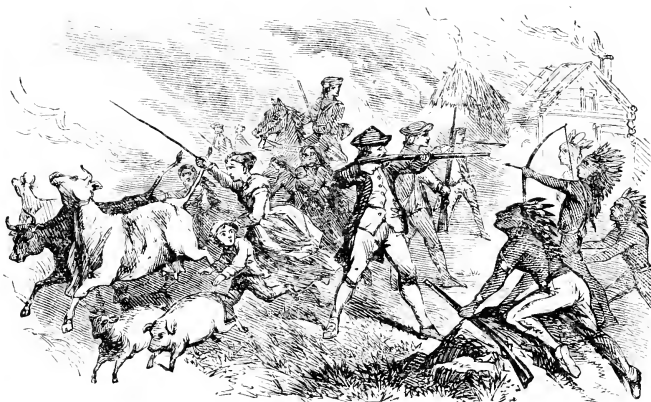
A. Thomas Carey was appointed Governor, but soon after Edward Hyde was appointed in his place, whereupon Carey incited a rebellion.

Q. When was the rebellion suppressed?

A. In the year 1711.

Q. What happened in the year 1712?

A. The Tuscarora and Coree Indians formed a conspiracy to destroy the whites.



SETTLERS FLEEING FROM THE INDIANS.

Q. Give some account of this conspiracy.

A. The savages took the settlers by surprise, and killed a great number of men, women, and children.

Q. Who checked the savages?

A. The militia of the country assembled, and held them in

check until they could get assistance from South Carolina, when the savages were completely defeated.

Q. What was the population of North Carolina in 1717?

A. It was a little over two thousand.

Q. What at length caused a rapid increase of the population?

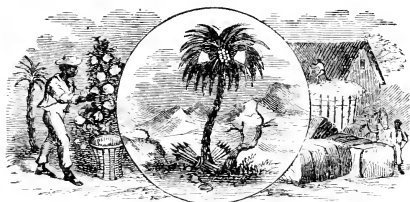
A. The beauty of the country and the richness of the soil became known, and emigrants from other countries rapidly poured into North Carolina.

Q. What was the population of North Carolina in 1775?

A. One hundred and eighty-one thousand.

CHAPTER XV.

Settlement of South Carolina.



SEAL OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

Q. WHEN and where was the first English settlement made in South Carolina?

A. In 1670, at Port Royal.

Q. To what place did they remove next year?

A. They removed to the western bank of the Ashley River and commenced building a town.

Q. Why did they abandon this latter place?

A. Because the site was not well chosen, inasmuch as large vessels could not approach the town.

Q. To what place did they then remove?

A. To Oyster Point, formed by the junction of the Cooper and Ashley Rivers, and here they laid the foundations of the present city of Charleston.

Q. In what year was this?

A. In 1680.

Q. Who was the first Governor of South Carolina?

A. William Sayle, who came over with the settlers to Port Royal in 1670; but he died soon after his arrival.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. Joseph West.

Q. By whom was negro slavery introduced into South Carolina?

A. By Sir John Yeamans, who came from Barbadoes with fifty families and nearly two hundred slaves.

Q. When was this?

A. In 1671.

Q. What else can you say of Sir John Yeamans?

A. Soon after his arrival he succeeded Joseph West, and continued to act as Governor until 1674.

Q. Who then became Governor?

A. Joseph West again became Governor, which office he held for eight years. It was during his administration that the city of Charleston was commenced (in 1680).

Q. How many Governors were there over South Carolina from 1682 to 1686?

A. There were in that time no less than five Governors.

Q. What happened in 1686?

A. The Spaniards laid waste the settlements of Port Royal.

Q. Who was the Governor of South Carolina?

A. Joseph Morton.

Q. What did Morton determine to do?

A. He determined to attack the Spanish settlement of St. Augustine, in Florida.

Q. How was he prevented from carrying out his plans?

A. By the Proprietors, who under the grant from Charles II. had control of both North and South Carolina.

Q. How were large accessions made to the strength of the Colony in 1686?

A. Large numbers of Protestant refugees from France settled in South Carolina.

Q. What can you say of the government of South Carolina from 1686 to 1695?

A. It was subject to frequent change, and for a part of the time the Colony was in a very disturbed state.

Q. Who became Governor in 1695?

A. John Archdale, a Quaker, who was Governor of North Carolina at the same time.

Q. Who succeeded John Archdale in 1696?

A. Joseph Blake.

Q. What happened in 1702?

A. War broke out between England and Spain, which also involved the Carolinians in war with the Spaniards of Florida.

Q. Who was Governor of South Carolina at this time?

A. James Moore was the Governor.

Q. What did Governor Moore do?

A. He fitted out an expedition of twelve hundred colonists and friendly Indians, and sailed against St. Augustine.

Q. What success did he meet with?

A. He was unable to take the fort at St. Augustine, and was obliged to raise the siege.

Q. What did Governor Moore do soon afterwards?

A. He made an expedition against the Appalachee Indians across the Savannah River, burned their towns and villages, killed several hundred of them, and obliged the others to submit to the English Government.

Q. In what war did South Carolina become involved in 1712?

A. In a war with the Tuscarora and Coree Indians, who had made an attack upon the settlers of North Carolina.

Q. Who was at that time Governor of South Carolina?

A. Charles Craven.

Q. How many men did he send to the assistance of the North Carolinians?

A. He sent six hundred militia, under the command of Colonel Barnwell.

Q. By whom were they assisted?

A. By nearly four hundred friendly Indians.

Q. With what success did Barnwell meet?

A. He defeated the savages with great slaughter.

Q. Did the Tuscaroras ever renew the war?

A. They did, but were terribly defeated by Colonel James Moore.

Q. What did the Tuscaroras do after this last defeat?

A. They abandoned their country and moved northward.

CHAPTER XVI.

Affairs in Virginia and New York.

Q. WHO emigrated to Virginia in 1673?

A. Nathaniel Bacon, an intelligent and ambitious young lawyer.

Q. What happened two years after his arrival?

A. A war broke out with the Susquehanna Indians.

Q. Were the people satisfied with the way in which Sir William Berkeley, the Governor, carried on the war?

A. They were not.

Q. What did they accordingly do?

A. They elected Bacon general, whereupon he applied to Governor Berkeley for a commission.

Q. When the Governor refused the commission, what did Bacon and his followers do?

A. They raised a rebellion, during the course of which Jamestown was burned and many depredations committed.

Q. What ended the rebellion?

A. Bacon died, and his followers submitted to the authority of the Governor.

Q. What important event happened in Virginia during the reign of William and Mary in England?

A. The founding of a college under the patronage of the King and Queen.

Q. What name was given to the college?

A. It was styled the College of William and Mary.

Q. What was done under the leadership of Governor Spottswood in 1714?

A. The mountains were crossed, and the beautiful valleys beyond them were made known.

Q. With what did Governor Spottswood present each of his companions on their return from this expedition?

A. He presented each of them with a golden horseshoe as a memento of the expedition.

Q. What important treaty was made in the Colony of New York in 1684?

A. A treaty was made with a powerful Indian Confederacy, known as the Five Nations.

Q. Who entered into this treaty with the Indians?

A. Colonel Dongan, Governor of New York, and Lord Effingham, Governor of Virginia.

Q. What did this treaty embrace?

A. All the English settlements, and all the Indian tribes in alliance with them.

Q. What can you say of this treaty?

A. It was long and faithfully kept, and was of great advantage to the English settlers.

Q. What did De la Barre, French Governor of Canada, do in 1684?

A. He invaded the territory of the Five Nations with an army of seventeen hundred men.

Q. Did he meet with any success?

A. No; his expedition was a complete failure.

Q. Who led a still larger army against the Indian Confederacy?

A. De Nouville, his successor.

Q. What was the result of this expedition?

A. De Nouville fell into an ambuscade, and was defeated with heavy loss.

Q. What was the effect of these wars?

A. They embittered the Indians against the French, and strengthened their attachment to the English.

Q. Who succeeded De Nouville as Governor of Canada?

A. Count Frontenac, a skillful officer.

Q. What policy did he pursue towards the Five Nations?

A. He endeavored to gain their good will; and, though he could not persuade them to break their treaty with the English, he did persuade them to remain neutral in the war between the French and English.

Q. What was done on the 19th of January, 1690?

A. A party of about two hundred French and some Cayuga Indians set out to make an attack on the English settlements in the Colony of New York.

Q. Describe the attack on Schenectady.

A. On the night of the 8th of February the French and Indians attacked the village; sixty persons were massacred; twenty-seven were captured; others escaped and made their way to Albany, while many perished on the way.

Q. What was then done by a party of young men and Mohawk Indians?

A. They set out from Albany in pursuit of the enemy, of whom they succeeded in killing and capturing twenty-five.

Q. Where was an army raised for the purpose of avenging these and other barbarities?

A. An army was raised in New York and Connecticut.

Q. Against what two important places were expeditions sent?

A. An army under the command of General Winthrop was sent

against Montreal, while another force, commanded by Sir William Phipps, moved against Quebec.

Q. What was the result?

A. Both expeditions resulted in failure.

Q. Who inflicted considerable damage on the French in 1691?

A. Major Schuyler, at the head of a large body of Colonial and Indian forces.

Q. When did hostilities cease?

A. Not until the year 1697, when a peace was concluded at Ryswick, in Holland, between the French and English. This also ended the war in America.

Q. When was the war between England and France resumed?

A. In 1702, during the reign of Queen Anne in England.

Q. How long did this war last?

A. About eleven years, during all which time New York and the New England Colonies bore their full share not only in repelling the attacks of the French, but also in making attacks themselves.

Q. When was peace again made?

A. In 1713.

Q. How long did the peace last?

A. Until 1744, when war again broke out between France and England.

Q. How did New York suffer during this war?

A. New York suffered greatly from frequent incursions of the French and their Indian allies.

Q. Did the treaty of peace in 1748 put an end to these depredations?

A. It did not. There was no real security in the border settlements of New York until after the termination of the French dominion in Canada.

Q. What was the population of the Colony of New York at the commencement of the French and Indian War of 1754?

A. It did not exceed one hundred thousand.

CHAPTER XVII.

Affairs in New England from 1675 to 1754.

Q. WHEN did King Philip's war begin?

A. In June, 1675.

Q. Who was King Philip?

A. He was the son and successor of Massasoit, who had been such a friend to the English.

Q. Did Philip share the friendly feelings of his father?

A. He did not, and secretly matured a plan by which he hoped to exterminate all the New England settlements.

Q. How did the war begin?

A. By an attack upon Swanzy, in Plymouth.

Q. How long did King Philip's war last?

A. It lasted until August, 1676, or a little more than one year.

Q. How was it terminated?

A. By the defeat and death of Philip.

Q. What damage had been done to the colonists?

A. Six hundred of the inhabitants had been killed, twelve or thirteen towns had been destroyed, a heavy debt had been contracted, and their wealth had been greatly diminished.

Q. What tribes of Indians besides the Wampanoags had been drawn into the war?

A. The Nimpucks and Narragansets.

Q. Who was the chief of the Narragansets?

A. Canonehet.

Q. Describe the attack on his camp.

A. About one thousand men surprised the camp of Canonehet, and captured it after a desperate fight. One thousand Indians

were slain; six hundred wigwams (or huts) were burnt, and many of the savages perished in the flames.

Q. What became of Canonchet himself?

A. He was taken prisoner and put to death, because he refused to make peace.

Q. Did the Indian tribes who were engaged in this war ever renew hostilities?

A. They did not, for they were almost exterminated.

Q. What became of King Philip's family?

A. His wife and son were captured.

Q. What was done with his son?

A. The son of Philip, who was only nine years old, was taken to Boston, where he was condemned by the authorities to be sold as a slave in Bermuda.

Q. What can you say of this transaction?

A. It was an act of great barbarity, and was an exhibition of the grossest ingratitude; for though Philip had done the colonists much harm, yet Massasoit, the grandfather of the boy, had befriended and sheltered the settlers at Plymouth when they were few and feeble.

Q. How long after this war did New England enjoy repose?

A. Until the breaking out of war between England and France in 1688.

Q. What was this war called?

A. It was called King William's war, because it occurred during his reign.

Q. Of what country was William king?

A. He was King of England.

Q. How did the war commence in America?

A. By an attack on Schenectady, in New York, in February, 1690. This has been described in a previous chapter.

Q. What town in New Hampshire was attacked by the French and Indians?

A. Salmon Falls. Thirty of the inhabitants were killed, and fifty-four were carried into captivity.

Q. What did the Colonies do?

A. They unitedly resolved to carry the war into the enemy's country.

Q. Against what place was an expedition sent?

A. Against Port Royal, in Acadia, as Nova Scotia was then called.

Q. With what result?

A. They captured Port Royal and subdued all Acadia.

Q. What was the result of an expedition against Quebec?

A. It failed, as has already been mentioned in a previous chapter.

Q. What happened in 1696?

A. Port Royal was recovered by the French, and soon afterwards all Acadia fell again under their power.

Q. What brought a brief repose to the Colonies?

A. The peace of Ryswick, concluded in 1697, between France and England.

Q. How many years did the peace continue?

A. Only five years.

Q. Mention some of the principal events of this war.

A. In 1707 another attempt was made upon Port Royal, which failed; the next year Haverhill, in New England, was burned by the Indians; more than one hundred persons lost their lives, and many were carried into captivity. The same year an expedition against Quebec failed, but one soon after undertaken against Port Royal succeeded.

Q. After this last capture of Port Royal, to what was its name changed?

A. It was changed to Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne, who was now on the throne of England.

Q. What expedition was undertaken in 1711 in consequence of the success of the attempt upon Port Royal?

A. A grand land and naval expedition was undertaken against Quebec and Montreal.

Q. With what result?

A. The fleet was scattered in a storm in St. Lawrence Bay, and one thousand men were lost. This disaster caused the failure of the expedition, for the land forces could do nothing without the aid of the fleet.

Q. What put an end to this war?

A. The peace of Utrecht, concluded in 1713.

Q. For how long a time did the Colonies of New England continue to enjoy undisturbed repose?

A. For about thirty-one years.

Q. When did war again break out between France and England?

A. In 1744.

Q. What did the French do soon after the commencement of hostilities?

A. They made a descent upon Nova Scotia, and met with some important successes, but failed in an attack upon Annapolis.

Q. Against what place did the New England Colonies send a strong force?

A. Against Louisbourg, on the island of Cape Breton, which surrendered to them after a siege of seven weeks.

Q. How did the French attempt to retaliate?

A. A powerful fleet sailed from France, having on board an army of four thousand men, with the intention of invading New England.

Q. What became of this expedition?

A. A violent storm destroyed a large portion of the fleet, and finally they were obliged to make the best of their way back to France.

Q. Where and when was a treaty of peace signed between England and France?

A. At Aix-la-Chapelle, in Germany, in October, 1748.

Q. Had the New England Confederation, which was formed in 1643, continued to exist all this time?

A. It had not, for King Charles II. had, in 1684, annulled the charters of all the New England Colonies, and of course the Confederation ceased to exist at the same time.

Q. Which one of the New England Colonies preserved its charter?

A. Connecticut.

Q. How was the charter of Connecticut saved?

A. When Sir Edmund Andros, who had been appointed by the King Captain-General of all New England, demanded the charter of Connecticut, some one of the patriots carried it away secretly and hid it in the hollow of an oak, and this saved it from destruction.

Q. When were their charters restored to the New England Colonies?

A. In 1689, by King William.

Q. When was a new charter granted to the Colonies of Massachusetts and Plymouth?

A. In 1691. By the charter the two Colonies became one, under the name of Massachusetts.

Q. What large district of country was at the same time annexed to Massachusetts?

A. That territory which now constitutes the State of Maine.

Q. Was the New England Confederation revived after this?

A. It was not, although the New England Colonies uniformly acted in concert during all the wars with the French, which we have described.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Affairs in South Carolina.

Q. WHEN did a war begin between the South Carolinians and the Yemasseees?

A. In April, 1715.

Q. How did the war commence?

A. The Yemasseees made an attack upon Pocotaligo, in South Carolina, and killed ninety persons. They also killed many people in the country, and carried others into captivity.

Q. What fears were entertained?

A. It was feared that even Charleston might be attacked by them.

Q. What did the Governor do?

A. He ordered out every man under arms, and even armed some of the most trusty of the slaves.

Q. What did the Governor himself do?

A. He marched against the Indians at the head of two hundred and forty men.

Q. Where did he encounter the enemy?

A. On the Combahee River he encountered five hundred Indian warriors, whom he defeated with great loss.

Q. What did Colonel Mackey do?

A. He captured an Indian town, and also a fort, and inflicted much damage on the enemy.

Q. What success did the Indians meet with in other quarters?

A. They defeated Captain Thomas Barker, who, at the head of ninety men, was led into an ambush, where he and several of his men were slain.

Q. What other success did the Indians have?

A. They made an attack on a force of seventy white men and

forty negroes, who had thrown up a breastwork and resolved to defend themselves. At first the Indians were repulsed, but they at last succeeded in surprising the garrison, and put most of them to death.

Q. Who shortly afterwards met and defeated the Indians?

A. Captain Chicken, at the head of the Goose Creek militia.

Q. What did Captain Chicken prove himself to be?

A. He proved himself to be true game.

Q. What was the condition of the Colony at this time?

A. The whole country was deserted to within twenty miles of Charleston.

Q. What was the number of the enemy?

A. The enemy numbered from eight to ten thousand warriors.

Q. How many men was South Carolina able to put in the field?

A. Only about twelve hundred men capable of bearing arms.

Q. What did Governor Craven do in this emergency?

A. He sent an agent to New England to purchase arms, and applied to Virginia for aid. At the same time he invaded the enemy's country.

Q. Who were chosen to lead the Carolina troops?

A. Lieutenant-General James Moore, and Colonels John Barnwell and Alexander Mackey.

Q. What success attended the efforts of the Carolinians?

A. The Yemassee were driven beyond the Savannah River.

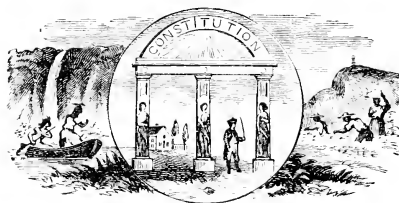
Q. Where did these Indians now take up their residence?

A. In Florida.

Q. Did the Indians ever again attempt to renew the war?

A. They did not. Carolina now enjoyed a long interval of repose.

CHAPTER XIX.

Settlement of Georgia.

SEAL OF GEORGIA.

Q. BY whom was the Colony of Georgia founded?

A. By James Edward Oglethorpe.

Q. When was a charter for establishing this Colony obtained from the King?

A. In June, 1732.

Q. After whom was the Colony named?

A. After George II., King of England.

Q. What was the extent of Georgia?

A. It extended from the Savannah River to the Mississippi, and embraced not only the present State of Georgia, but also nearly all of that territory which now constitutes the States of Alabama and Mississippi.

Q. What was the object of Oglethorpe in founding this Colony?

A. His object was to provide a home for the poor of Great Britain, and also to furnish a place of refuge for the Salzburgers and other persecuted Protestants on the Continent of Europe.

Q. How many persons accompanied Oglethorpe to Georgia?

A. One hundred and sixteen.

Q. When did they set sail from England?

A. In November, 1732.

Q. When did they arrive in the harbor of Charleston?

A. In January, 1733, after a voyage of nearly two months.

Q. Who was Governor of South Carolina at this time?

A. Robert Johnson.

Q. How did he and the Carolinians receive Oglethorpe and his party?

A. With the greatest generosity.

Q. With what did the Carolinians furnish them?

A. With provisions and stock, and also with vessels to convey additional supplies to the Savannah River.

Q. What else did the Carolinians do for the new settlers?

A. They sent along a company of soldiers to protect them against the Indians until they could build houses and fortifications.

Q. After leaving Charleston, where did Oglethorpe and his followers go?

A. To Beaufort, South Carolina. Here Oglethorpe left the party and ascended the Savannah River until he came to Yamacraw Bluff. This spot he selected for his settlement.

Q. When did the new settlers arrive at the Bluff?

A. On the 1st of February, and the first house was commenced on the 9th.

Q. What did Oglethorpe call his town?

A. He called it Savannah, from the name of the river on the banks of which it was situated.

Q. Who immediately sought an alliance with Oglethorpe?

A. Tomochichi, chief of the Yamacraws, a tribe of Indians who lived near by.

Q. With what other Indians did Oglethorpe make treaties?

A. With the Creeks, with the Muscogeas, and even with the Cherokees of the mountains and the Choctaws on the borders of the Gulf of Mexico.

Q. How was the Colony strengthened in March, 1734?

A. By the arrival of seventy-eight Salzburgers from Germany.

Q. Who were these Salzburgers?

A. They were German Protestants, who had been driven from their homes by the most terrible persecutions.

Q. Where did the Salzburgers settle?

A. At a place which they named Ebenezer, in a portion of Georgia now known as Effingham County.

Q. What settlements were made in other portions of Georgia?

A. A company of Scotch Highlanders was located at Darien, a company of immigrants was settled at Frederica, on St. Simon's Island, and trading-posts were established at Augusta.

Q. How many immigrants came over to Georgia in February, 1736?

A. Two hundred and twenty-seven.

Q. Who accompanied them?

A. John and Charles Wesley, who came over to preach the gospel to the Indians, and also to the settlers.

Q. What other celebrated minister of the gospel came to Georgia in 1738?

A. Rev. George Whitefield, who resided in the Colony several years.

Q. What institution was established by Whitefield during his stay in Georgia?

A. The Orphan House at Bethesda, a few miles from Savannah.

Q. What nation claimed the territory of Georgia as her own, and regarded its colonization by the English as an intrusion upon her rights?

A. Spain.

Q. What did the Spaniards resolve to do?

A. They resolved to expel the English from Georgia.

Q. In anticipation of a war with Spain, what did Oglethorpe do in 1737?

A. He went to England, where he raised a regiment of six hundred men for the defense of the Colony.

Q. What office was now conferred upon Oglethorpe?

A. He was made commander-in-chief of all the militia forces of Georgia and South Carolina.

Q. When did the war break out between England and Spain?

A. In 1739.

Q. What did Oglethorpe do soon after war was declared?

A. He invaded Florida, at that time a Spanish province, at the head of two thousand men, some being Carolinians, some friendly Indians, and some from his own regiment.

Q. Did this expedition meet with success?

A. It did not.

Q. What did the Spaniards do in 1742?

A. They invaded Georgia with a land and naval force of three thousand men.

Q. In this emergency, what was Oglethorpe obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to rely upon his own resources, for the Carolinians would give him no assistance.

Q. What force had Oglethorpe with which to meet the invaders?

A. Only about seven or eight hundred men.

Q. Did any general engagement occur between the two armies?

A. No general engagement occurred between the two armies, but a Spanish force of three hundred was attacked by a small body of English troops and routed, with a loss of two hundred men.

Q. What was the result of the invasion?

A. The Spaniards, being deceived by the movements and stratagems of Oglethorpe, concluded that he had a large army, and retreated.

Q. Did the Spaniards ever make another attempt to conquer Georgia?

A. They did not.

Q. When did Oglethorpe leave Georgia and return to England?

A. In 1743.

Q. What change was made in the government of the Colony after the departure of Oglethorpe?

A. A civil government was substituted for the military government which had previously prevailed.

Q. When was slavery introduced into Georgia?

A. In 1747. Before that time slavery had been prohibited, but the laws against the introduction of negroes were repealed in that year.

Q. What danger threatened the Colony in the latter part of 1747?

A. A man named Bosomworth and his wife Mary (who was an Indian squaw and claimed to be Queen of the Creeks) marched at the head of an Indian force upon Savannah.

Q. What did they demand?

A. They demanded a large tract of land to which Mary laid claim as of right belonging to her.

Q. What did they threaten to do unless their demands were complied with?

A. They threatened to exterminate the colonists.

Q. Were their demands complied with?

A. They were not; and the Indians were deprived of their leaders and forced into submission.

Q. When did the Trustees, to whom the charter for the establishment of the Colony of Georgia had been granted, surrender their rights under it to the Crown?

A. In 1752.

Q. Who became Governor of Georgia in 1754?

A. Captain John Reynolds, of the Royal Navy.

Q. On whom was the government of the Colony now conferred?

A. On a Legislature, in conjunction with the Governor and his Council.

Q. By whom were the Governor and Council appointed?

A. By the King of England.

Q. Of what did the Legislature consist?

A. It consisted of delegates elected by the people.

CHAPTER XX.

The French and Indian War of 1754.

Q. WHAT was the cause of the French and Indian War of 1754?

A. The rival claims of the French and English in America.

Q. What was the design of the French?

A. Their design was to confine the English to the country east of the Alleghany Mountains.

Q. In order to effect this purpose, what did the French do?

A. They began the erection of a chain of forts from Nova Scotia, along the Lakes and down the Mississippi, to the Gulf of Mexico.

Q. What was the first act of hostility?

A. While the agents of a company styled the Ohio Company were surveying some lands which had been granted by the British Government in 1749, they were seized by a party of French and Indians and carried as prisoners to a French fort.

Q. How did some Indians who were friendly to the English resent this treatment of their allies?

A. They seized several French traders and sent them to Pennsylvania.

Q. What did the French do soon afterwards?

A. They began to build forts south of Lake Erie, of which the Ohio Company seriously complained.

Q. This territory was within the original charter limits of what Colony?

A. Of the Colony of Virginia.

Q. Who remonstrated with the French commander?

A. Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia.

Q. Who was the bearer of a letter from the Governor of Virginia to the French commandant?

A. George Washington, who was then only twenty-two years old.

Q. What rank had Washington at this time?

A. He at this time held the rank of major.

Q. What answer did the French commander return to the Governor of Virginia?

A. He answered that he was acting under instructions from the Governor of Canada, whom alone he was bound to obey.

Q. What did Governor Dinwiddie now do?

A. He prepared to oppose the French.

Q. Where did a party of thirty men sent out by the Ohio Company prepare to erect a fort?

A. At the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers, where Pittsburg now stands.

Q. What did the French do?

A. They drove away the English, completed the fort themselves, and called it Fort Du Quesne.

Q. What happened to a party of French who endeavored to intercept the advance of Washington?

A. They were surprised, and nearly all were either killed or captured.

Q. What did Washington erect at the place where the French were defeated?

A. He erected a fort, which he called Fort Necessity.

Q. By whom was he here joined?

A. By additional troops from New York and Carolina.

Q. To what did his whole force amount?

A. To about four hundred men.

Q. By whom was he soon afterwards attacked?

A. By about fifteen hundred French and Indians.

Q. What was he obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to capitulate.

Q. On what condition did he surrender?

A. On condition of being permitted to return with his men to Virginia.

Q. When did this capitulation take place?

A. July 4, 1754.

Q. When the British Government perceived that war with France was inevitable, what did it advise the Colonies to do?

A. It advised them to form a union for the purpose of providing for the general defense.

Q. Where was a Congress of the Colonies held?

A. At Albany, New York.

Q. What Colonies were represented in this Congress?

A. The Colonies of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland.

Q. By whom was the plan of union drawn?

A. By Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania.

Q. When did the Congress adopt the plan of union?

A. On the 4th day of July, 1754.

Q. Was this proposed plan of union ever carried out?

A. No; it was rejected both by the Colonial Assemblies and by the British Government.

Q. Why was it rejected by the Colonial Assemblies?

A. Because they thought too much power was given to the President-General of the Confederation.

Q. Why was it rejected by the British Government?

A. Because it was thought too much power was assumed on the part of the respective Colonial Governments.

Q. How was it determined to carry on the war?

A. With British troops, aided by such forces as the Colonies might separately furnish.

CHAPTER XXI.

French and Indian War.—Continued.

Q. Who arrived from Ireland with two British regiments early in 1755?

A. General Braddock, commander-in-chief of all the forces in America.



GENERAL BRADDOCK.

Q. How many expeditions were agreed upon between Braddock and the Colonial Governors?

A. Three: one against Fort Du Quesne, one against Niagara, and one against Crown Point, on Lake Champlain.

Q. By whom was the expedition against Fort Du Quesne led?

A. By Braddock.

Q. What was the result of this expedition?

A. Braddock fell into an ambush; he was slain, and his army defeated with terrible slaughter.

Q. Who covered the retreat, and saved the army from destruction?

A. Colonel George Washington, with a body of Virginia troops.

Q. Did Sir William Johnson, who commanded the expedition against Crown Point, meet with any better success?

A. He did; about forty-five miles north of Albany he met the enemy and utterly defeated them.

Q. Why did Johnson deem it best not to attack Crown Point?

A. Because he heard that the French had strengthened the fort very much, and that they had also taken and fortified Ticonderoga.

Q. What did he do, however?

A. He built a fort near the scene of his victory, which he called Fort William Henry.

Q. What did he do later in the season?

A. He left garrisons at Forts William Henry and Edwards, and retired to Albany.

Q. What did the expedition against Niagara accomplish?

A. It accomplished nothing, except the erection of two forts on the east side of the river, in which garrisons were left.

Q. Who was appointed commander of all the forces in America in 1756?

A. Lord Loudon.

Q. Who was appointed to command until his arrival from England?

A. General Abercrombie.

Q. Had war been formally declared up to this time?

A. It had not.

Q. When was it formally declared?

A. In May, 1756.

Q. What was done in August by the French commander, the Marquis Montcalm?

A. He crossed Lake Ontario with about six thousand French and Indians, and besieged Fort Ontario, on the Oswego River.

Q. What did the garrison do?

A. They retired to an old fort on the west side of the river.

Q. What was the strength of the garrison?

A. They numbered about fourteen hundred men.

Q. What were they finally compelled to do?

A. They were compelled to surrender.

Q. Who marched against and defeated the Indians on the Alleghany River, in the same month?

A. Colonel John Armstrong, at the head of three hundred men.

Q. During the campaign of 1757, what force was sent against Louisbourg?

A. A force of ten thousand men, under Lord Loudon.

Q. Was the expedition successful?

A. Nothing was accomplished, and the expedition was abandoned.

Q. What success did the French meet with?

A. The Marquis Montcalm, with about ten thousand French and Indians, captured Fort William Henry and its garrison of twenty-five hundred men.

Q. What was done by the Indians after the surrender of the English?

A. They fell upon the English and massacred the greater part of them.

Q. Who became Prime Minister of England in July, 1757?

A. William Pitt, afterwards Earl of Chatham.

Q. What can you say of his administration?

A. Under his lead affairs soon wore a brighter aspect.

Q. How many men were promised for the war from England?

A. Twelve thousand men.

Q. How many men were the Colonies required to furnish?

A. Twenty thousand.

Q. When General Abercrombie succeeded Loudon, how many men did he find himself in command of?

A. He found himself in command of fifty thousand men.

Q. How many distinct enterprises were embraced in the campaign of 1758?

A. Three: an expedition was sent against Louisbourg, a second

against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and a third against Fort Du Quesne.

Q. What can you say of the expedition against Louisbourg?

A. It was a complete success; Louisbourg was captured, and the British dominion was extended over the islands of Cape Breton and Prince Edward.

Q. Who commanded the expedition?

A. The land forces were commanded by Generals Amherst and Wolfe, and the fleet by Admiral Boscawen.

Q. Give an account of the expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

A. On the 5th of July, General Abercrombie, with fifteen thousand men, marched to attack Fort Ticonderoga. On the 6th, Montcalm attacked him, but was repulsed. Two days afterwards the English attacked Fort Ticonderoga, but were repulsed, with a loss of two thousand men.

Q. What fort did the English succeed in taking?

A. Fort Frontenac. Here they captured a large quantity of stores and ammunition.

Q. Who commanded the expedition against Fort Du Quesne?

A. General Forbes, who left Philadelphia in July with nine thousand men.

Q. What did the French do on the approach of the English?

A. They abandoned the fort.

Q. Who was the first to reach the fort?

A. Colonel Washington, with the Virginians.

Q. What name was given to the fort by the English?

A. They called it Fort Pitt, in honor of Mr. Pitt, the British Prime Minister.

Q. What is the place now called?

A. It is called Pittsburg, and is now a large and prosperous city of Pennsylvania.

CHAPTER XXII.

French and Indian War.—Concluded.

Q. Who was appointed to command the English forces in America in 1759?

A. General Amherst.

Q. What was the plan for the campaign for this year?

A. General Wolfe was to attack Quebec; General Amherst was to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and unite his forces with General Wolfe; and General Prideaux, with a third army, was to take Niagara, and then march against Montreal.

Q. By whom was the first advantage gained?

A. By General Amherst.

Q. What forts did he capture?

A. Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

Q. Was he able to join General Wolfe before Quebec?

A. He was not, and therefore went into winter quarters at Crown Point.

Q. What happened to General Prideaux while besieging Niagara?

A. He was accidentally killed.

Q. Who then took command of his forces?

A. Sir William Johnson.

Q. Who attempted to relieve the place?

A. A body of French and Indians.

Q. Did they succeed?

A. They did not. They were routed with great slaughter, and the fort soon after surrendered to the English.

Q. What was General Wolfe doing while these events were in progress?

A. He was prosecuting the siege of Quebec.

Q. How large an army had he ?

A. He had about ten thousand men.

Q. How large was the French force ?

A. Nearly thirteen thousand.

Q. Where did Wolfe land his men near the last of June ?

A. On the isle of Orleans, a short distance below Quebec.

Q. What was the result of an attempt made by Wolfe to storm the French camp between the St. Charles and Montmorency Rivers ?

A. He was repulsed, with a loss of nearly five hundred men.

Q. What did Wolfe do on the night of the 12th of September ?

A. He effected a landing within less than two miles of the city ; his army ascended the steep bluff, and at sunrise was drawn up on the Plains of Abraham.

Q. What ensued ?

A. A bloody battle, in which both Wolfe and Montcalm were mortally wounded.

Q. What was the result of the battle ?

A. The French were routed and driven into the city.

Q. Where did General Wolfe die ?

A. He died on the battle-field, just after being informed that the French were fleeing.

Q. What did he say when he heard of the victory of the English ?

A. His reply was, "Then I die contented."

Q. Where did Montcalm die ?

A. In Quebec.

Q. What did he say when informed that he must die ?

A. "So much the better ; for then I shall not live to witness the surrender of Quebec."

Q. When did the city surrender ?

A. Five days afterwards.

Q. What did the French attempt in 1760 ?

A. They attempted to retake Quebec, but failed.

Q. When did Montreal and all the remaining French posts in Canada surrender to the English ?

A. In September, 1760.

Q. What war broke out in the Southern Colonies during the same year?

A. A war with the Cherokees.

Q. What was the result of this war?

A. The Cherokees, being defeated in several battles, at last begged for peace, and obtained it.

Q. When did the French and Indian War end?

A. In February, 1763.

Q. What did France yield to Great Britain?

A. All her possessions in North America east of the Mississippi River.

Q. What nation had joined France in the war against Great Britain?

A. Spain.

Q. What did Spain cede to Great Britain by the treaty made at this time?

A. Her possessions of East and West Florida.

General Review of the Previous Lessons.

¹The student will remember that on the morning of the 12th of October, 1492, *Columbus first landed on the island of Gu-a-na-han-i, one of the Bahamas.* ²On the same voyage he discovered *Cuba*, which he supposed to be Japan, and *Haiti*, which he named Hispaniola. ³On returning to Spain, *he was received with the greatest honors by Ferdinand and Isabella, the King and Queen.* After this he made other voyages to the New World, established settlements, and built towns and forts. ⁴On his second voyage he discovered *the islands of Dominica, Porto Rico, and Jamaica.* ⁵*From the fact that he supposed the islands which he had discovered to be parts of India, originated their name of West Indies, and for the same reason the original inhabitants, not only of the islands, but also of the continent, have been styled Indians.*

1. What important event occurred on the morning of the 12th of October, 1492? 2. What other lands did he discover on this voyage? 3. How was he received on his return to Spain? 4. What did he discover on his second voyage? 5. From what did the name of West Indies originate? 6. Why were the original inhabitants called Indians?

⁷ On his third voyage Columbus discovered *the main-land of South America*, which he supposed to be ⁸ *Asia*. ⁹ Even to the day of his death *he did not know that he had discovered a New World*.

Notwithstanding the fact that Columbus had added a New World to the dominions of Spain, ¹⁰ *he was in the latter years of his life treated with injustice and cruel neglect*.

In the year 1500, after having spent two years in the government of the Spanish settlements in the West Indies, he was arrested and sent home in chains. It is true that he was released on reaching Spain, by order of the King and Queen, but he was never restored to his former honors and dignities. ¹¹ *He died in obscurity and poverty at Valladolid on the 20th of May, 1506*.

America, which should have been called after Columbus, received its name from ¹² *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine navigator*, who visited the New World, and in 1499 published a map of the coast, and gave some very interesting descriptions of the lands which he visited. Soon after the discovery of America, ¹³ *the Spaniards and Portuguese* began to make conquests and settlements.

7. What did Columbus discover on his third voyage? 8. What did he suppose this land to be? 9. Did he ever know that he had discovered a New World? 10. How was Columbus treated in the latter years of his life? 11. How, where, and when did he die? 12. After whom was America called? 13. Who began to make settlements and conquests soon after the discovery of America?

The Spaniards took possession of ¹⁴ *Mexico, Florida, Central America, and the greater part of South America*. The Portuguese took possession of ¹⁵ *that extensive country of South America now known as the Empire of Brazil*. The French also planted Colonies in ¹⁶ *Nova Scotia, Canada, and Louisiana*. Great Britain claimed ¹⁷ *the exclusive right to plant Colonies in North America*,

¹⁸for the reason that John Cabot, a Venetian in the service of Henry VII., King of England, discovered the main-land of North America fourteen months before the main-land of South America was discovered by Columbus. These rival claims of the English, Spaniards, and French led ¹⁹to wars, which were frequently waged with a bitter and unrelenting spirit.

²⁰The first attempt of the English to plant Colonies in North America failed, and it was ²¹not until the year 1607, one hundred and fifteen years after the discovery of America by Columbus, that the English succeeded in making their first permanent settlement, ²²at Jamestown, Virginia. After this ²³they gradually extended their possessions in North America by settlement and conquest, at times coming into conflict ²⁴with the French, the Spaniards, and the Dutch.

14. Of what countries did the Spaniards take possession? 15. Of what did the Portuguese take possession? 16. Where did the French plant Colonies? 17. What did Great Britain claim? 18. On what grounds? 19. To what did these rival claims of the English, French, and Spaniards lead? 20. What of the first attempt of the English to plant Colonies in America? 21. When did they make their first permanent settlement? 22. Where? 23. What did they do after this? 24. With whom did they at times come in conflict?

The English Colonies in North America at the breaking out of the great French and Indian War were ²⁵*New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia*, ²⁶thirteen in all.

At first New York was colonized ²⁷by the Dutch, New Jersey ²⁸by people from Denmark and Norway, and Delaware ²⁹by the Swedes and Finns. These, however, had all fallen ³⁰into the hands of the English, and at the breaking out of the French and Indian War the large majority of their population was English. These various Colonies of England ³¹had increased rapidly in population and importance, notwithstanding their wars with the Indians, the French, and the Spaniards.

25. Mention the English Colonies in North America at the breaking out of the French and Indian War. 26. How many in all? 27. By whom was New York first colonized? 28. By whom was New Jersey? 29. By whom was Delaware? 30. Into whose hands had all these fallen? 31. What can you say of these various Colonies of England?

The result of the French and Indian War (in which the Colonies had taken a most honorable part) was ³²*to increase greatly the power of Great Britain in America*, and the Colonies, now relieved from all fear of French invasion in the north or of Spanish interference in the south, confidently looked forward ³³*to a period of long-continued peace and prosperity.*

32. What was the result of the French and Indian War? 33. To what did the Colonies now look forward?

PART SECOND.

FROM THE CLOSE OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR TO
THE BEGINNING OF WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

CHAPTER I.

Difficulties between the Colonies and the Mother-Country.

Q. WHAT was the general feeling throughout the Colonies at the close of the French and Indian War?

A. There was a feeling of devoted attachment towards England, the mother-country.

Q. What soon brought about a change in their feelings?

A. A dispute which arose between the Colonies and the British Parliament about taxes.

Q. What was the cause of this dispute?

A. The Parliament asserted that the Colonies ought to bear their share of the debt contracted in the late war with France, and claimed the right to tax them. This right the Colonies denied.

Q. Why did the Colonies deny the right of Parliament to tax them?

A. Because they had no representation in the British Parliament.

Q. What did they claim?

A. They claimed that taxation and representation ought to go together, and that it was unjust for a Parliament in which they had no voice to levy a tax upon them.

Q. What act was passed by Parliament in 1765?

A. An act known as the Stamp Act.

Q. What was the Stamp Act?

A. It was an act requiring all contracts, notes, bonds, deeds, writs, and public documents to be on Government stamped paper.

Q. What did the passage of this act cause?

A. It caused great excitement, especially in Virginia and Massachusetts.

Q. How was this excitement still further increased?

A. By the determination of Parliament to send troops to Massachusetts and other places.

Q. What was done by the General Court of Massachusetts in June?

A. A circular was issued urging all the Colonies to send delegates to a Convention to be held in New York the next October.

Q. How many Colonies responded to this call?

A. Nine.

Q. What did this Convention do?

A. It agreed upon a declaration of principles, and asserted the right of the Colonies to be exempted from all taxes not imposed by their own consent.

Q. What was done by the merchants of Philadelphia, Boston, New York, and other places?

A. They agreed to buy no more goods from Great Britain until the Stamp Act was repealed.

Q. What was done by the Parliament in March, 1766?

A. The Stamp Act was repealed, but it was at the same time declared that Parliament had the right to bind the Colonies in all cases whatsoever.

Q. How was the news of this repeal of the Stamp Act received in America?

A. The news of this repeal was received with great rejoicing.

Q. When was the scheme of taxation revived?

A. June 29, 1767.

Q. What act was passed at this time?

A. An act imposing a tax on all glass, paper, painters' colors, and tea imported into the Colonies.

Q. Among other acts passed, what one caused the most intense excitement ?

A. An act forbidding the Legislature of New York from passing any act whatever until supplies should be furnished the royal troops at the expense of the Colony.

Q. What happened on the 1st of October, 1768 ?

A. About seven hundred British troops arrived in Boston, sent for the purpose of overawing the citizens.

Q. What did the British Parliament do in 1769 ?

A. They approved the employment of force against the Colonies, and requested the King to have the traitors (as they styled the leading patriots) carried to England for trial.

Q. What did the Colonial Assemblies do ?

A. They reasserted their rights, and denied the right of the King to take offenders out of the country for trial.

Q. What occurred at Boston on the 5th of March, 1770 ?

A. An affair known as the Boston Massacre.

Q. Give an account of the Boston Massacre.

A. A dispute having arisen between some soldiers and citizens, the citizens were fired upon ; three were killed and several wounded.

Q. What was done with the soldiers ?

A. They were tried for murder ; two were convicted of manslaughter, the rest were acquitted.

Q. What happened in England on the same day on which the " Boston Massacre " took place ?

A. A bill was passed by Parliament repealing all the duties except that on tea.

Q. Did this satisfy the Colonies ?

A. It did not.

Q. Why ?

A. Because they insisted that there should be no taxation at all without representation.

Q. What bill was passed by Parliament in 1773 ?

A. An act was passed allowing the East India Company to carry

their tea into the Colonies free of all duty except that to be paid in the port of entry.

Q. Would the Colonies pay this duty?

A. They would not pay even this small duty.

Q. Why would they not pay it?

A. They declared that the principle was the same whether the duty were great or small.

Q. What was done at New York and Philadelphia?

A. The vessels having the tea on board were not allowed to enter.

Q. What was done with the tea at Charleston, South Carolina?

A. It was landed and stored away in damp cellars, and there left to rot.

Q. What was done in Boston?

A. A party of men disguised as Mohawk Indians went on board the tea-ships, broke open all the chests, and threw the tea into the sea.

Q. What was done by Parliament to punish this popular violence?

A. The "Boston Port Bill" was passed, closing the harbor of Boston, and removing the custom-house to Salem.

Q. What else was done?

A. The charter of Massachusetts was revoked, and the Governor was authorized to send criminals to England, or to another Colony, for trial.

Q. What did the Virginia Legislature do when they heard of this action of Parliament with regard to Massachusetts?

A. They protested against it, expressed sympathy for the people of Boston, and appointed the first day of June as a day of "fasting, humiliation, and prayer."

Q. What did Dunmore, the royal Governor, then do?

A. He dissolved the Assembly.

Q. What did they then do?

A. They adjourned to a tavern, and there passed a resolution that "an attack on one Colony was an attack on all."

Q. What did they advise?

A. They advised that a general Congress of all the Colonies should be held at Philadelphia.

Q. When did Congress meet?

A. On the 5th of September, 1774.

Q. How many Colonies were represented?

A. Twelve.

Q. What Colony was not represented?

A. Georgia, which Colony was so situated that it could not at that time send delegates.

Q. What did this Congress do?

A. They made a declaration of the rights of the Colonies, drew up a petition to the King, and issued addresses to the British people, to the Colonies, and to the Province of Quebec.

Q. What did Lord Chatham do early in the year 1775?

A. He introduced a bill in Parliament which he hoped would bring about a reconciliation.

Q. Did he succeed?

A. He did not; for Parliament would listen to nothing but the absolute submission of the Colonies.

CHAPTER II.

Commencement of the War of the Revolution.

Q. How many British troops were assembled in Boston by the 1st of April, 1775?

A. Three thousand.

Q. Who was in command of this force?

A. General Gage.

Q. What did General Gage do on the night of the 18th of April?

A. He secretly sent eight hundred men to destroy some military stores that had been collected at Concord by the patriots.

Q. How far is Concord from Boston?

A. Twenty miles.

Q. By whom were the British troops met at five o'clock on the morning of the 19th?

A. By about seventy militia, commanded by Captain Parker.

Q. Where were they met?

A. At Lexington.

Q. Who commanded the British force?

A. Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn.

Q. When they met the militia, what did Major Pitcairn do?

A. He rode up to them and ordered them to disperse.

Q. Did they obey him?

A. They did not.

Q. What did he then do?

A. He fired his pistol at them and ordered his soldiers to fire.

Q. What then happened?

A. The soldiers fired, several of the militia were killed, and the rest dispersed.

Q. What did the British troops then do?

A. They went on to Concord, and destroyed a part of the stores. But the militia rapidly assembled, and assailed the British as they were returning.

Q. How many men did the British lose in this affair?

A. They lost two hundred and seventy-three men, of whom sixty-five were killed.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans in killed and wounded?

A. Nearly one hundred.

Q. What was the result of the battle of Lexington?

A. It roused the Colonies from Massachusetts to Georgia.

Q. What two important posts were seized in May by Connecticut and Vermont militia?

A. The two forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

Q. Who commanded the Americans at the taking of these forts?

A. Colonels Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold.

Q. What fell into the hands of the Americans by these captures?

A. One hundred pieces of cannon, and other military stores.

Q. When did the second Congress of the Colonies assemble at Philadelphia?

A. On the 10th of May, 1775, the same day on which Ticonderoga was taken.

Q. How many Colonies were represented?

A. When the Congress first assembled, there were delegates present from twelve Colonies; some time afterwards, those from Georgia arrived, and then all the thirteen Colonies were represented.

Q. What was one of the first things that was done by this Congress?

A. One of the first things that this Congress did was to proclaim their reasons for taking up arms.

Q. What important measures did they adopt?

A. They voted an army of twenty thousand men, and the issue of bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars.

Q. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the armies of the United Colonies?

A. George Washington.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 15th of June.

Q. In stating their reasons for taking up arms, what did the Congress declare?

A. They declared that they had "no wish to separate from their mother-country, but only to maintain their chartered rights."

Q. While these things were being done by the Congress at Philadelphia, where were important events transpiring?

A. At Boston. Here, on the 25th of May, the British troops received reinforcements, commanded by Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne.

Q. What was now the total number of the British force in Boston?

A. More than ten thousand men.

Q. What proclamation was issued by General Gage on the 12th of June?

A. A proclamation declaring those in arms to be rebels and traitors.

Q. What did he offer?

A. He offered pardon to all who would lay down their arms, except Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

Q. In order to prevent the British from advancing into the country, what did the forces of the Colonists determine to do?

A. They determined to fortify Bunker Hill, an eminence commanding the neck of the peninsula of Charlestown.

Q. What mistake was made?

A. The detachment under Colonel Prescott fortified Breed's Hill, an eminence nearer Boston.

Q. When was this hill fortified?

A. On the night of the 16th of June.

Q. What did General Gage resolve to do?

A. He resolved to drive the Americans from this position.

Q. What was the strength of the Americans at this point?

A. Their strength was about fifteen hundred men, under the command of General Putnam.

Q. Who advanced against them?

A. General Howe, at the head of about twenty-five hundred British regulars

Q. As the British advanced, what village did they burn?

A. They burned Charlestown.

Q. Describe the attack upon the American works.

A. The British made two desperate assaults, but were each time repulsed with terrible slaughter. General Clinton then came over with one thousand fresh troops, and, after a desperate fight, the works were carried.

Q. What has this battle been called?

A. The battle of Bunker Hill.

Q. What was the total loss of the British?

A. One thousand and fifty-four.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans?

A. About four hundred and fifty, among whom was General Joseph Warren.

Q. What was the effect of this battle upon the Americans?

A. Although they had been finally compelled to retire, they were greatly encouraged, from having withstood so bravely the assaults of British regulars.

Q. When did Washington arrive at Cambridge and take command of the American army around Boston?

A. On the 12th of July, nearly one month after the battle of Bunker Hill.

Q. What was the size of the American army at this time?

A. It numbered about fourteen thousand men.

Q. What happened in Virginia during the latter part of 1775?

A. Lord Dunmore, the royal Governor, having been driven from the Colony, raised a regiment of negroes, to whom he offered their freedom, and attacked the Virginians near Norfolk, but was defeated.

Q. What did he do some time after this?

A. He burned a part of the town.

Q. What expedition was undertaken in September?

A. A body of troops from New York and New England, under the command of General Montgomery, invaded Canada.

Q. Give an account of this expedition.

A. They captured Fort St. John, in Canada, also Fort Chambly, and, one month later, the town of Montreal.

Q. What place did Montgomery reach by the 1st of December?

A. He reached Quebec, and there found General Arnold, who, with a body of troops, had marched across Maine into Canada, and had been in front of Quebec waiting Montgomery's arrival.

Q. What did Montgomery and Arnold do on the 31st of December?

A. They made an attack on Quebec, but were repulsed, Montgomery being killed and Arnold severely wounded.

Q. What did the Americans do in the spring?

A. They abandoned the attempt on Quebec, and retreated from Canada.

Q. What great success cheered the Americans in March, 1776?

A. Washington seized and fortified Dorchester Heights, which commanded Boston on the south. Howe, the British general, seeing that he could not dislodge the Americans, evacuated the city.

Q. To what place did the British fleet convey Howe and his troops?

A. To Halifax, in Nova Scotia.

Q. Where did the next active operations of the British take place?

A. Near Charleston, in South Carolina.

Q. When did the British fleet appear near Charleston?

A. On the 4th of June.

Q. Who commanded them?

A. Sir Peter Parker commanded the fleet, and General Clinton the land forces.

Q. When did a battle take place?

A. On the 28th of June, when the British attacked Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's Island.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. The British were repulsed, after a bombardment which lasted ten hours.

Q. What did they do after this repulse?

A. They sailed northward.

CHAPTER III.

War of the Revolution (continued).—Declaration of Independence.



INDEPENDENCE HALL.

Q. WHEN the people of the Colonies saw that England was determined to force them to submit, what did they begin to think of?

A. They began to think of independence.

Q. What Colony had taken the first step in that direction?

A. North Carolina.

Q. When had the people of a part of North Carolina expressed themselves in favor of independence?

A. As early as May, 1775; but the other Colonies were not at that time in favor of separation from the mother-country.

Q. When was the subject brought prominently forward in Congress?

A. In January, 1776, when Massachusetts instructed her delegates in Congress to vote for independence.

Q. Did the idea of independence now meet with favor?

A. It did; and before the close of June all the Colonies had instructed their delegates in Congress to vote for independence.

Q. Where and when did Congress declare the thirteen Colonies to be free and independent States?

A. In Philadelphia, on the 4th of July, 1776.

Q. How was the announcement of this declaration received throughout the Colonies?

A. It was received with great rejoicing everywhere.

Q. When was a plan of Union laid before the Congress?

A. On the 12th of July, eight days after the declaration of independence.

Q. What were the articles of Union styled?

A. They were styled "Articles of Confederation, and perpetual Union between the States."

Q. What was the plan of Union?

A. According to the plan of Union, the States conferred certain powers upon the United States in Congress assembled, and reserved others to themselves.

Q. Were these articles of Union adopted?

A. They were finally adopted by all the States.

Q. What happened soon after the declaration of independence?

A. Several disasters befell the Americans.

Q. What was the first of these disasters?

A. A battle on Long Island, near Brooklyn, which was fought on the 27th of August.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Americans were defeated, with the loss of fifteen hundred men, many of whom were prisoners.

Q. What American generals were captured on this occasion?

A. Generals Sullivan and Sterling.

Q. What other disaster soon followed this battle?

A. Washington was obliged to retreat from New York, which city was occupied by the British.

Q. When were the Americans again worsted by the British?

A. On the 28th of October, at White Plains.

Q. What happened on the 17th of November?

A. Fort Washington, on the Hudson, was captured, together with its garrison of nearly three thousand men.

Q. What was the loss of the British in this battle?

A. Nearly one thousand in killed and wounded.

Q. What was Washington now forced to do?

A. He was obliged to retreat across New Jersey into Pennsylvania.



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

Q. What can you say about this retreat?

A. In this retreat the American army suffered terribly. Many of the soldiers were poorly clad and barefoot, and the frozen ground was tracked with their blood.

Q. What effect had this disaster upon the Americans?

A. The Americans felt gloomy and disheartened; desertions in the army were frequent, and Washington's force was reduced to about three thousand men.

Q. What American general was taken prisoner about this time?

A. General Charles Lee.

Q. Who took command of Lee's forces?

A. General Sullivan, who had been exchanged.

Q. What was Washington's force after being reinforced by Sullivan's command?

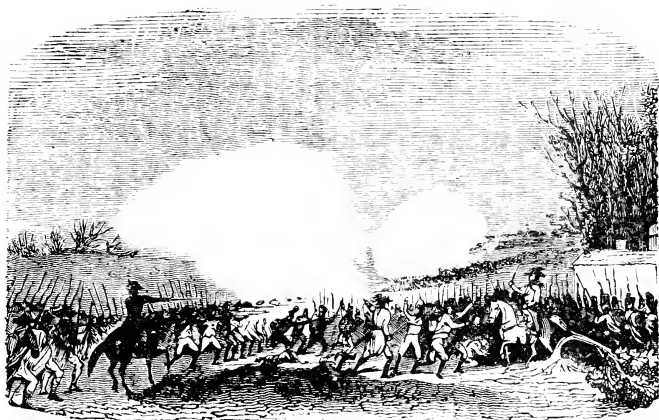
A. It was about five thousand men.

Q. What did Washington do on Christmas night?

A. He crossed the Delaware for the purpose of surprising a body of Hessians who were encamped at Trenton.

Q. Who were the Hessians?

A. They were German soldiers hired by George III., King of England, to assist in conquering the Americans.



BATTLE OF TRENTON.

Q. Did Washington succeed in this attempt?

A. He was completely successful. The enemy were defeated; Colonel Rahl, their commander was slain, and one thousand Hessians were made prisoners of war.

Q. What was the result of this victory?

A. It revived the hopes and courage of the Americans.

Q. What other important success was achieved by Washington soon after?

A. On the 3d of January, 1777, he attacked the British at Princeton, and gained a complete victory.

Q. What was the British loss in this battle?

A. Their loss was about four hundred, in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans?

A. About one hundred, among them General Mercer.

Q. What did Washington do after these victories?

A. He continued to send out expeditions, until he recovered the greater part of New Jersey from the British.

CHAPTER IV.

War of the Revolution.—Continued.

Q. WHAT happened in April, 1777?

A. General Tryon, with a large British force, made a raid into Connecticut, burned the town of Danbury, destroyed the supplies collected there, and committed many depredations.

Q. What happened on their return?

A. They were attacked by the militia, and lost nearly three hundred men.

Q. What successes had the Americans soon after this?

A. They destroyed twelve British vessels at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, and at Newport, Rhode Island. Lieutenant-Colonel Barton captured General Prescott, who was afterwards exchanged for General Charles Lee.

Q. What distinguished foreigners came over to America to aid the colonists during this year?

A. The Marquis de la Fayette and the Baron de Kalb, from France, and Count Pulaski, a Polish nobleman.

Q. What other distinguished Pole had come to America the previous autumn?

A. Thaddeus Kosciusko.

Q. What flag was adopted by the Congress during the summer of 1777?

A. A flag having thirteen alternate stripes of red and white, and having thirteen white stars on a blue field, each star representing a sovereign, independent State.

Q. What was the leading feature of the British campaign of 1777?

A. An invasion from Canada, supported by a movement up the Hudson from New York.

Q. Who had charge of the movement from Canada?

A. Sir John Burgoyne.

Q. Who commanded the co-operating force which was expected to move up the Hudson from New York?

A. Sir Henry Clinton.

Q. Describe the march of Burgoyne's army.

A. Burgoyne, with a force of ten thousand men, advanced, forcing the Americans, under Generals Schuyler and St. Clair, to retire before him. Ticonderoga, Crown Point, and Fort Edward were captured, and the Americans were forced back to the Mohawk River.

Q. When did Burgoyne's real difficulties begin?

A. After passing Lake Champlain.

Q. What was his chief difficulty?

A. His supplies failed him.

Q. What effort was made by Burgoyne to procure supplies?

A. He sent Colonel Baum with a force of Hessians to seize the American supplies at Bennington, in Vermont.

Q. Who met Colonel Baum and defeated him?

A. General Stark, with a body of Vermont militia, or Green Mountain Boys, as they were called.

Q. What effect had this defeat upon Burgoyne?

A. It delayed him nearly a month.

Q. What else added to the embarrassment of Burgoyne?

A. The defeat of St. Leger, who, with a force of British and Indians, was besieging Fort Schuyler (now Rome, in the State of New York).

Q. Give some account of the siege of Fort Schuyler.

A. While the British were besieging the fort, General Herkimer, at the head of a body of militia, was defeated and slain; but on the approach of General Arnold the British were deserted by their Indian allies, and the whole British force was compelled to retreat.

Q. To what number was Burgoyne's force now reduced?

A. To about six thousand men.

Q. What was the condition of the American army?

A. The troops were in excellent spirits, and reinforcements were constantly arriving.

Q. Who commanded the Americans?

A. General Gates, and he was assisted by Arnold, Lincoln, and Morgan.

Q. When did a general engagement occur between the two armies?

A. On the 19th of September, at Stillwater.

Q. What was the result?

A. Neither army gained the victory.

Q. What happened nearly three weeks later?

A. Another battle occurred at the same place, in which the British were defeated with great loss.

Q. What able general did the British lose?

A. General Frazer.

Q. What did Burgoyne now attempt?

A. He tried to retreat to Fort Edward.

Q. Did he succeed?

A. He did not.

Q. What was he compelled to do?

A. He was obliged to surrender his army to the Americans, at Saratoga.

Q. When did this event take place?

A. On the 17th of October, 1777.

Q. By what was this great victory soon followed?

A. By the recapture of Forts Clinton and Montgomery, and the reoccupation of Ticonderoga, and of all the other posts on the northern frontier that had been abandoned by the Americans.

Q. How had Clinton succeeded in his march up the Hudson to assist Burgoyne?

A. At first he met with great success; but after the surrender of Burgoyne he was obliged to retreat to New York.

Q. While these operations were going on in the State of New York, what was done by Sir William Howe?

A. He sailed from New York for the purpose of attacking Philadelphia.

Q. In what month was this?

A. In the month of July.

Q. What was the size of the British army?

A. It numbered more than sixteen thousand men.

Q. At what point did the British forces disembark?

A. At the head of Chesapeake Bay.

Q. When Washington found that the British general was moving upon Philadelphia from the south, what did he do?

A. He hastened to meet the enemy.

Q. How large was the American force?

A. It numbered little more than half that of the enemy.

Q. When did the two armies meet?

A. On the 11th of September, 1777.

Q. Where did they meet?

A. At Chadd's Ford, on the Brandywine Creek.

Q. What occurred?

A. A desperate battle.

Q. What was the result?

A. After making a gallant resistance, the Americans were compelled to give way before the superior numbers of the British.

Q. What city fell into the hands of the British?

A. Philadelphia.

Q. To what place did Congress retire?

A. To York, in Pennsylvania.

Q. What did Washington do on the 4th of October?

A. He made an attack on the British at Germantown, but, after a severe conflict, was repulsed.

Q. What did the British do soon after?

A. They made an attack on a part of Washington's army stationed at Red Bank, but were defeated with great loss.

Q. What British officer was slain at the battle of Red Bank?

A. General Donop.

Q. With what success did the British meet soon after this?

A. They captured Forts Mifflin and Mercer, but the garrisons escaped.

Q. Where did Washington now take post?

A. At Whitemarsh.

Q. What did Howe do early in the month of December?

A. He advanced with the design of attacking Washington; but, finding the Americans strongly posted, the British general retired to Philadelphia without a battle.

Q. Where did the British army spend the winter?

A. In Philadelphia.

Q. What was their condition?

A. They were supplied with everything necessary to their comfort.

Q. Where did the American army pass the winter?

A. At Valley Forge, sheltered by rude huts.

Q. What was their condition?

A. They were destitute of every comfort, and their sufferings were very great.

Q. During the gloomy winter at Valley Forge, what efforts were made by some malicious persons?

A. Efforts were made to injure Washington in the estimation of the army and the people.

Q. Did these efforts succeed?

A These efforts entirely failed, and met with the contempt which they deserved.

Q. Who rendered great service to the American army at this time?

A. Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer, who had distinguished himself in the wars of Frederick the Great.

Q. What great services did he render?

A. He assisted Washington to reorganize the army, and introduced a uniform system of drill and tactics.

CHAPTER V.

War of the Revolution.—Continued.

Q. WHAT was the condition of Washington's army as the spring drew near?

A. The condition of the army was much improved.

Q. What reinforcement had Washington received during the winter?

A. He had been reinforced by four thousand troops of the victorious army which had captured Burgoyne.

Q. What was he now able to do?

A. He was able to take the field with forces about equal to those of his adversary.

Q. What good results had followed the capture of Burgoyne's army?

A. This important victory had greatly encouraged the Americans, and had enabled Washington to receive reinforcements from the army which had been operating against Burgoyne.

Q. What was another important result of the victory over Burgoyne?

A. The French Government acknowledged the independence of

the thirteen United States, and made a treaty of alliance with them.

Q. What commissioners signed this treaty on the part of the United States?

A. Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee.

Q. When was this treaty signed?

A. On the 6th day of February, 1778.

Q. When did Congress ratify the treaty?

A. On the 4th of May following.

Q. What had been done by the Government of Great Britain soon after receiving the news of the surrender of Burgoyne?

A. Commissioners had been sent to America to see if the difficulties could not be settled without a separation of the Colonies from the mother-country.

Q. How were their proposals received?

A. The Congress refused to treat unless Great Britain would withdraw her troops and acknowledge the independence of the United States.

Q. What did the French Government now do to assist the Americans?

A. The French sent out a fleet under D'Estaing to blockade the British fleet in the Delaware, while Washington intended to operate against the enemy by land.

Q. Who now commanded the British?

A. Sir Henry Clinton was in command, Sir William Howe having resigned.

Q. What did Sir Henry Clinton do as soon as he took command?

A. He prepared to evacuate Philadelphia.

Q. Why did he take this step?

A. He feared lest his army should be in danger of capture if he waited until the French fleet arrived in the Delaware.

Q. What did the British fleet in the Delaware do?

A. It sailed to New York, conveying the greater part of the baggage and stores.

Q. What did General Clinton himself do?

A. He abandoned Philadelphia and retreated across New Jersey with his army, numbering twelve thousand men.

Q. What did Washington now do?

A. He started in pursuit with a force about equal in number.

Q. Where did Washington overtake the retreating enemy?

A. At Monmouth, in New Jersey.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 28th of June, 1778.

Q. Give an account of the battle of Monmouth.

A. General Charles Lee, commanding the van of the American army, was ordered to make an immediate attack. He did so, but, being pressed by the British regulars, ordered a retreat. Washington, however, coming up with the main army, drove the British back. The battle then lasted until night ended the conflict.

Q. What did Washington intend to do?

A. He intended to renew the battle on the next morning.

Q. Why did he not renew it?

A. Because the British retreated during the night.

Q. What was the loss of the British in this battle?

A. About five hundred men.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans?

A. About two hundred and thirty.

Q. To what place did the British proceed after the battle of Monmouth?

A. They proceeded to Sandy Hook, and from thence sailed to New York.

Q. Where did Washington take position?

A. At White Plains, where he remained with the main body of his army until he went into winter quarters at Middlebrook, in New Jersey.

Q. What occurred in August?

A. An attack was planned upon the British garrison at Newport, in Rhode Island. The attack was to be made both by sea and by land.

Q. Who was to make the attack by sea?

A. D'Estaing, with the French fleet.

Q. Who had command of the movement by land?

A. General Sullivan, assisted by Generals Greene and La Fayette.

Q. What was the strength of the American army operating against Newport?

A. The army numbered ten thousand men.

Q. What happened soon after operations commenced?

A. A British fleet approached.

Q. What did D'Estaing do?

A. He sailed out to meet them; but a severe storm arose, and separated the combatants.

Q. What did the French fleet do soon afterwards?

A. It went to Boston for repairs.

Q. What did Sullivan do?

A. He raised the siege and retired.

Q. What occurred near Quaker Hill?

A. The British attacked Sullivan, but were repulsed.

Q. What happened in July in the Valley of Wyoming, in Pennsylvania?

A. A party of Tories and Indians, led by Colonel John Butler, came into the Valley of Wyoming, defeated the small force opposed to them, captured Fort Wyoming, slaughtered the garrison after its surrender, and massacred men, women, and children.

Q. Where did a like scene occur in November?

A. In Cherry Valley, New York.

Q. Who commanded the Indians and Tories in the attack on the people of Cherry Valley?

A. Brant, a noted Mohawk chief.

Q. Who were the Tories?

A. They were Americans who sided with the British.

Q. What did Sir Henry Clinton do in November, 1778?

A. He sent two thousand men under Lieutenant-Colonel Campbell, and a fleet under Admiral Hyde Parker, against Savannah, in Georgia.

Q. By whom was Savannah defended?

A. By nine hundred American troops, commanded by General Robert Howe.

Q. What occurred on the 29th of December?

A. The British occupied Savannah, after defeating the Americans.

Q. What did the American forces do after their defeat?

A. They crossed the Savannah River into South Carolina.

Q. What happened in consequence of the capture of Savannah?

A. The lower part of Georgia was overrun by the British and Tories.

CHAPTER VI.

War of the Revolution.—Continued.

Q. WHAT was the strength of the British force in the South in the beginning of the year 1779?

A. About three thousand effective men.

Q. Who commanded them?

A. General Prevost.

Q. Who had been sent to take command of the American army in this quarter?

A. General Lincoln, a brave officer, who had won distinction in the Northern campaigns.

Q. What is said of the army under Lincoln's command?

A. It was inferior in number to the British, and consisted almost entirely of militia.

Q. While Lincoln was reorganizing his army and endeavoring to get them ready for an active campaign, what did General Prevost do?

A. He sent Colonel Campbell against Augusta, which town he occupied on the 1st of February, 1779.

Q. What other expedition was sent out by the British general?

A. A body of regulars was sent to take possession of Port Royal Island, but they were defeated by General Moultrie, with considerable loss.

Q. What other defeat did a body of British and Tories meet with on the 14th of February?

A. They experienced a severe defeat at Kettle Creek, some distance above Augusta.

Q. Describe the battle of Kettle Creek.

A. Colonel Boyd, who commanded a large body of Tories, was on his way to unite his forces with the main British army, when he was attacked by Colonels Pickens and Clarke, at the head of some Carolina and Georgia militia, and totally defeated.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans in this battle?

A. Their loss was thirty-two killed and wounded.

Q. What was the loss of the British?

A. About one hundred and fifty, Colonel Boyd himself being mortally wounded.

Q. What did the British General Prevost do soon after this battle?

A. He withdrew Colonel Campbell and the British troops from Augusta.

Q. To what point did the British retreat?

A. To Hudson's Ferry, about fifty miles above Savannah.

Q. Encouraged by these successes, what did General Lincoln do?

A. He sent General Ashe, with nearly four thousand men, to take position at Brier Creek near where it empties into the Savannah River.

Q. What happened on the 3d of March?

A. General Ashe was surprised and defeated by General Prevost.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans in this battle?

A. About three hundred and forty killed, wounded, and prisoners.

Q. What was the result of the defeat of the American at Brier Creek?

A. The plans of Lincoln were frustrated, and the conquest of that portion of Georgia below Augusta was made complete for the time.

Q. Did General Lincoln now abandon the idea of driving the British out of Georgia?

A. He did not, but made every effort to repair the disaster of Brier Creek.

Q. What was the strength of his army by the middle of April?

A. By the middle of April his army numbered five thousand men.

Q. What did he do on the 23d of April?

A. He set out at the head of four thousand men, intending to enter Georgia at Augusta, and left one thousand men, under General Moultrie, to watch the movements of the British.

Q. What did General Prevost do as soon as he learned of the advance of Lincoln into Georgia?

A. He advanced upon Charleston, South Carolina, by rapid marches, forcing Moultrie to retreat before him.

Q. What was Lincoln now compelled to do?

A. He was compelled to abandon his enterprise and hasten to the defense of Charleston.

Q. What did Prevost do on Lincoln's approach?

A. He gave up his attempt on Charleston and retired.

Q. What was the result of an attack made on a British force at Stono Ferry, on the 20th of June, by a body of Carolina militia?

A. The Carolinians were repulsed with considerable loss.

Q. What did the British do shortly afterwards?

A. They established a post at Beaufort, in South Carolina, but the main body of their army returned to Savannah.

Q. How did the British forces at the North squander their resources during this year?

A. In marauding expeditions.

Q. What was done in February by General Tryon, the last royal Governor of Connecticut?

A. He destroyed the salt-works at Horse Neck, in Connecticut, and plundered the town.

Q. What remarkable feat was performed by General Putnam at this place?

A. He made his escape from the British by riding down a steep precipice, called the Stone Steps, over which the British dared not follow him.

Q. What did Tryon do in July?

A. He burned East Haven, Fairfield, and Norwalk, plundered New Haven, and ravaged the coasts of Connecticut in every direction.

Q. What did General Clinton attempt in May and June?

A. He attempted to get control of the Hudson.

Q. With what success did he meet?

A. He captured Stony Point on the 31st of May, and Verplanck's Point on the 1st of June.

Q. When was Stony Point recaptured by the Americans?

A. About midnight on the 15th of July.

Q. Who commanded the Americans on this occasion?

A. General Anthony Wayne.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans in this battle?

A. Nearly one hundred men.

Q. What was the loss of the British?

A. Six hundred killed, wounded, and prisoners.

Q. What other important success had the Americans on the 19th of July.

A. A body of Americans commanded by Major Henry Lee surprised a British garrison at Paulus Hook, killing thirty and capturing one hundred and sixty.

Q. When and where was a great victory gained over the Indian allies of the British?

A. In the latter part of August, at Elmira, in the State of New York.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Sullivan, at the head of five thousand men, attacked the Indians under Brant, Johnson, and Butler, and completely routed them.

Q. How did General Sullivan follow up his victory?

A. He laid waste the Indian country as far as the Genesee River, which empties into Lake Ontario.

Q. What was the effect of these defeats upon the Indians?

A. They gave up all thoughts of further war.

Q. When did Count D'Estaing appear near Savannah with a French fleet?

A. On the 9th of September.

Q. What did he and the American General Lincoln now do?

A. They united their forces and laid siege to Savannah.

Q. What did the two commanders at last determine to do?

A. They determined to make an attempt to carry the town by assault.

Q. When was the assault made?

A. On the 9th of October, 1779.

Q. With what result?

A. The combined French and American armies were repulsed, with the loss of nearly one thousand men. Among these were the noble Count Pulaski and the gallant Sergeant Jasper.

Q. While the American and French forces were in front of Savannah, what exploit was performed by Colonel John White of the Georgia line?

A. By a skillful stratagem, he, with but a few followers, captured five British vessels, one hundred and thirty stand of arms, and one hundred and eleven British soldiers.

Q. What was done by the allied forces after their repulse before Savannah?

A. They raised the siege; the French fleet sailed to the West Indies, and General Lincoln returned with his army to Charleston.

Q. What celebrated naval combat occurred off the coast of Scotland in September?

A. A combat occurred between the British war-ship *Serapis* and the American ship of war *Bon-homme Richard*.

Q. What was the result?

A. The *Serapis* was obliged to surrender.

Q. Who commanded the American vessel?

A. Commodore Paul Jones.

Q. What nation joined the enemies of England during this year?

A. Spain.

CHAPTER VII.

War of the Revolution.—Continued.

Q. WHAT resolution did Sir Henry Clinton take as soon as he heard that D'Estaing had left the American coast?

A. He resolved to conquer South Carolina.

Q. When did he land on John's Island, near Charleston?

A. On the 11th of February, 1780.

Q. What was the condition of South Carolina at this time?

A. The State was poorly provided with the means of defense; the Tories and Indians harassed the inhabitants of the border counties; and the army under Lincoln was too small to offer an effective resistance.

Q. What did Lincoln first propose to do when he heard of the advance of the British upon Charleston?

A. His first impulse was to abandon the city.

Q. Why did he not do so?

A. He was urged by the inhabitants to remain, and he did so, trusting to the arrival of reinforcements which had been promised him.

Q. Did the reinforcements arrive?

A. They did not, and Lincoln was hemmed in and besieged by Clinton.

Q. How long did the siege last?

A. The siege lasted about eight weeks.

Q. What happened on the 14th of April?

A. A force which had been assembled at Monk's Corner, under General Huger, for the relief of the city, was surprised and defeated.

Q. What was General Lincoln finally compelled to do?

A. He was forced to surrender Charleston, and with it his army, numbering nearly two thousand regular troops and between two and three thousand militia.

Q. What did Clinton do after the capture of Charleston?

A. He sent out detachments of troops, who occupied Camden and Ninety-Six, in South Carolina, and Augusta, in Georgia.

Q. What else was done by Clinton?

A. A truce was proclaimed, and pardon offered to all who would take British protection.

Q. What was the result of the truce and the offer of pardon?

A. Great numbers accepted the terms, and Clinton, thinking his conquest complete, sailed for New York, leaving Cornwallis in command.

Q. Did the British act in good faith to the inhabitants?

A. They did not.

Q. What was the result of their harsh treatment of the people?

A. The people were soon roused to resistance, and rallied to the standards of Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, of South Carolina, and Clarke, of Georgia.

Q. What did the Americans do under the lead of these men?

A. They carried on an active partisan warfare, and never relaxed their efforts until the British were driven completely out of Georgia and South Carolina.

Q. Did they meet with immediate success?

A. They did not, and at times were on the verge of ruin.

Q. By what were the struggling patriots encouraged in July?

A. By the news that Gates, the victor of Saratoga, was advancing with an army to their assistance.

Q. When Cornwallis, the British general, heard of the advance of Gates, what did he do?

A. He hastened up from Charleston to unite his forces with Lord Rawdon, who was at Camden.

Q. When and where did a battle occur between Gates and Cornwallis?

A. On the 15th of August, 1780, at Camden.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. The Americans were totally defeated, with the loss of nearly one thousand men killed, wounded, and prisoners, besides all their artillery, ammunition, and supplies.

Q. What distinguished officer was slain on the American side?

A. The brave Baron de Kalb.

Q. What was the British loss in this battle?

A. It was something over three hundred.

Q. What other misfortune happened soon after this?

A. The Americans under Sumter were defeated by the British under Tarleton, at Fishing Creek.

Q. What detachments did Cornwallis send out after his victory at Camden?

A. He sent Lieutenant-Colonel Tarleton to operate east of the Catawba, and Lieutenant-Colonel Ferguson to assemble the Tories among the mountains of North and South Carolina.

Q. While Ferguson was on his way, what happened at Augusta?

A. Colonel Elijah Clarke, with seven hundred men, laid siege to Augusta, and was about to capture the British garrison, when, a fresh body of the enemy coming up, Clarke was obliged to retire.

Q. When Ferguson heard of the retreat of Clarke, what did he do?

A. He advanced to intercept Clarke.

Q. What caused him to change his purpose?

A. He heard that a large body of militia from North and South Carolina and Georgia was advancing against him.

Q. What did he then do?

A. He selected a strong position at King's Mountain, and awaited the attack of the Americans.

Q. When did the Americans attack his position on King's Mountain?

A. On the 9th of October.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. The British were defeated, with a loss of three hundred killed and wounded, and eight hundred prisoners, besides fifteen hundred stand of arms.

Q. What became of Ferguson?

A. He was killed in the battle.

Q. What effect had this battle upon the plans of Cornwallis?

A. It frustrated his plans, and he fell back from Charlotte, in North Carolina, to Winnsborough, in South Carolina.

Q. With what success did General Sumter meet in November?

A. He defeated the British, under Major Wemys, at Fishdam Ferry, and Colonel Tarleton at Blackstocks.

Q. What other Carolina general distinguished himself at this time by keeping the British forces in check and by cutting off straggling parties of the enemy?

A. General Francis Marion.

Q. What disgraceful plot was discovered in September of the year in which the foregoing events occurred?

A. It was discovered that General Benedict Arnold, a man who had up to that time been considered one of the bravest of American officers, had formed a plan to betray West Point, in New York, into the hands of the British.

Q. How was the plot discovered?

A. Major André, a British officer, who had been consulting with Arnold about the surrender of West Point, was captured by three New York militia-men, and in his boots were found papers containing proofs of Arnold's treachery.

Q. What did Arnold do when he heard that his treason had been discovered?

A. He fled to the city of New York, to Sir Henry Clinton, who had him appointed a general in the British army.

Q. What became of Major André?

A. He was hung as a spy.

Q. What nation was added to the enemies of England in December, 1780?

A. Holland.

CHAPTER VIII.

War of the Revolution.—Continued.

Q. AFTER the defeat of Gates at Camden, whom did Congress appoint to take command of the Southern army?

A. General Nathaniel Greene.

Q. When did General Greene take command?

A. December 3, 1780.

Q. Where was the Southern army then stationed?

A. At Charlotte, North Carolina.

Q. What was the strength of Greene's army?

A. About two thousand men.

Q. What did Greene do soon after taking command?

A. He advanced into South Carolina, and took post at Cheraw, while he sent General Morgan in the direction of Ninety-Six.

Q. Whom did Cornwallis send against Morgan?

A. Colonel Tarleton.

Q. Where did a battle take place between the forces of Morgan and Tarleton?

A. At a place called the Cowpens.

Q. With what result?

A. The Americans were completely victorious.

Q. What was the British loss?

A. Three hundred killed and wounded, five hundred prisoners, and a large quantity of ammunition and stores.

Q. What was the loss of the Americans?

A. About seventy men, of whom only twelve were killed.

Q. Describe the movements of the two armies after the defeat of the British at the Cowpens.

A. Cornwallis advanced against the Americans with a large force. Greene and Morgan reunited their forces, and, as they were not strong enough to encounter the army of Cornwallis, they retreated into North Carolina, and from thence into Virginia.

Q. After Greene had received reinforcements, what did he do?

A. He advanced again into North Carolina.

Q. Where did Greene encounter Cornwallis?

A. At Guilford Court-House, on the 15th of March, 1781.

Q. How did the battle terminate?

A. Cornwallis held his ground, and Greene was obliged to retire after a hotly-contested fight.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies?

A. The American loss was not quite four hundred, while the British, though victorious, lost over five hundred.

Q. Was the British commander able to profit by his victory?

A. He was not.

Q. Why not?

A. Because he was in a hostile country, and had lost a great many men in battle, and many from sickness, while the American army was growing stronger every day.

Q. In view of these facts, what course did Cornwallis pursue?

A. Three days after the battle he retreated towards Wilmington.

Q. When Greene heard of the retreat of Cornwallis, what did he do?

A. He pursued as far as Deep River, and then discontinued the pursuit and marched into South Carolina.

Q. When and where did a battle occur between the army of Greene and the British under Lord Rawdon?

A. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, on the 25th of April.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. At first it seemed that the Americans would gain the vic-

tory; but some of the American troops, misunderstanding the order of their officer, became confused, and Greene was finally compelled to yield the field to his enemy.

Q. Was Lord Rawdon able to derive any benefit from his victory?

A. He was not, and was soon after obliged to retreat, as Cornwallis had done after the victory at Guilford.

Q. What caused Lord Rawdon to retreat?

A. The British forts Watson, Mott, Granby, and Orangeburg were captured by General Marion with the Carolina militia, assisted by Colonel Lee with a body of troops from Greene's army.

Q. Why did Rawdon retreat upon hearing this news?

A. Because his own position was no longer safe.

Q. To what place did he retire?

A. He retired to Monk's Corner, near Charleston, where he waited for reinforcements.

Q. What course did Greene now pursue?

A. He advanced upon Ninety-Six with his main army, and sent Colonel Lee with his legion to operate against Augusta.

Q. When Lee reached Augusta, with whom did he form a junction?

A. With General Pickens and Colonel Clarke, who, with the Carolina and Georgia militia, had already commenced a siege of the place.

Q. When did the British garrison at Augusta surrender to the united forces of Lee, Pickens, and Clarke?

A. On the 5th of June, 1781.

Q. Were the Americans as successful at Ninety-Six?

A. They were not.

Q. Why did they not succeed?

A. Because Rawdon, having received reinforcements, advanced to the relief of the besieged, and the Americans, after failing in an assault, retired.

Q. What did Rawdon do a few days after this?

A. On account of the exposed position of Ninety-Six, he

ordered Colonel Cruger to abandon the post and retire southward.

Q. What good results followed the capture of Augusta and the abandonment of Ninety-Six?

A. All the upper portions of Georgia and of South Carolina were recovered from the British.

Q. When did Greene resume operations against the British?

A. Early in September.

Q. When and where did he encounter the British?

A. On the 8th of September, at Eutaw Springs, in South Carolina.

Q. Who commanded the British in this battle?

A. Colonel Stewart, who had been left in command by Lord Rawdon.

Q. What can you say of the battle of Eutaw Springs?

A. Both parties claimed the victory.

Q. On what ground did the Americans claim the victory?

A. Because they had driven the British from the battle-field back to their camp.

Q. Why did the British claim the victory?

A. Because the Americans were repulsed from the British camp, and retired to the place where the battle first commenced.

Q. Who really had the advantage?

A. The Americans; for the British retreated during the night of the 9th, leaving their severely wounded in the hands of the Americans; and in consequence of this battle the British entirely abandoned all the up-country.

CHAPTER IX.

War of the Revolution (concluded).—Surrender of Cornwallis, and Peace with England.

Q. AFTER Greene returned into South Carolina, what did Cornwallis determine to do?

A. He determined to march northward, with the purpose of conquering Virginia.

Q. When did he set out from Wilmington?

A. On the 25th of April, 1781.

Q. When did he reach Petersburg, in Virginia?

A. About the last of May.

Q. How was the strength of his army increased when he reached Petersburg?

A. By a British force which he found stationed there.

Q. By whom had the coasts of Virginia been ravaged previous to the arrival of Cornwallis?

A. By the traitor Arnold, in January, and by the British General Phillips, in March.

Q. By whom had their depredations been checked?

A. By the Americans, commanded by La Fayette; but this force was too weak to oppose the enemy after the arrival of Cornwallis.

Q. What was done by Cornwallis after his junction with the British force at Petersburg?

A. He sent out detachments which overran the country and destroyed much property.

Q. What was done by one of these detachments?

A. One of these detachments penetrated as far as Charlottesville, captured several members of the Virginia Legislature, and came near capturing the Governor, Thomas Jefferson.

Q. What order did Cornwallis receive in June from Sir Henry Clinton?

A. He received orders to take post near the sea, so that he might, if necessary, send assistance to New York.

Q. To what place did Cornwallis proceed?

A. He proceeded to Yorktown, and began to fortify the place.

Q. Who held Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the river?

A. Colonel Tarleton, with a small body of British troops.

Q. What had Washington intended to do?

A. He had intended, in concert with the French fleet, to attack Sir Henry Clinton in New York.

Q. When did Washington abandon the idea of attacking New York?

A. In August.

Q. Why did he determine not to attack New York?

A. Because he thought that his chances for success would be better if he attacked Cornwallis.

Q. Was Clinton aware of Washington's intention?

A. He was not, and continued to think that New York would be the point of attack until Washington had actually crossed the Delaware.

Q. When Sir Henry Clinton discovered that Washington intended to attack Cornwallis, what did he do?

A. He immediately sent an expedition against Connecticut, thinking by this to recall Washington from his expedition against Cornwallis.

Q. Who had command of the expedition against Connecticut?

A. Arnold, the traitor.

Q. What town was plundered and burned by this expedition?

A. The town of New London.

Q. What forts fell into the hands of the British?

A. Fort Trumbull, which was abandoned on their approach, and Fort Griswold, which was carried by storm.

Q. What outrage was perpetrated at Fort Griswold?

A. The greater part of the American garrison was put to the sword.

Q. Did Washington pay any attention to the invasion of Connecticut?

A. He did not, but continued his march towards Yorktown.

Q. When did Washington, at the head of the combined French and American armies, appear before Yorktown?

A. On the 30th of September.

Q. In what position was the army of Cornwallis now placed?

A. It was entirely hemmed in on land by the French and Americans, and a French fleet blockaded the James and York Rivers, and thus prevented the escape of Cornwallis by sea.

Q. What was the strength of the allied French and American armies?

A. The allied armies numbered more than sixteen thousand men, of whom seven thousand were French.

Q. What was the strength of the British army?

A. It numbered about eight thousand men.

Q. Give a short account of the progress of the siege.

A. On the evening of the 9th of October Washington opened his batteries on the British fortifications, on the 14th two redoubts were carried by assault, and on the 16th nearly a hundred pieces of artillery opened on their works.

Q. What was the result of this terrible fire of artillery?

A. The walls were beaten down, and nearly every cannon on the British fortifications was silenced.

Q. What attempt did Cornwallis make on the night of the 16th?

A. He attempted to cross the York River with all his force, cut his way through the small force on the opposite side, and thus make his escape.

Q. Did he meet with any success?

A. His plan totally failed.

Q. What was Cornwallis now obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to surrender his entire army.

Q. When did this take place?

A. On the 19th of October, 1781.

Q. What did the army of Cornwallis number on the day of its surrender?

A. It numbered seven thousand and fifteen.

Q. To whom was the British shipping in the harbor surrendered?

A. To the French naval commander, the Count de Grasse.

Q. What was the result of this great victory?

A. The British power in America was completely broken.

Q. To what places were the British troops principally confined after this?

A. To the cities of New York, Charleston, and Savannah.

Q. What was the effect in England when news was received of the surrender of Cornwallis?

A. The party opposed to the war immediately gained the ascendancy.

Q. Who was appointed to command in America?

A. Sir Guy Carleton.

Q. What instructions had he?

A. He was instructed not to renew hostilities.

Q. What was now done?

A. Negotiations for peace were entered into.

Q. How many commissioners were appointed to conduct the negotiations?

A. Five on the part of the United States, and five on the part of Great Britain.

Q. Who were the five commissioners appointed on the part of the United States?

A. John Adams, John Jay, Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, and Henry Laurens. Jefferson, however, did not serve.

Q. Where did the commissioners meet?

A. At Paris.

Q. When was a provisional treaty of peace signed?

A. On the 30th of November, 1782.

Q. When was a final treaty signed?

A. On the 3d of September, 1783.

Q. Give some of the words of the first article of the treaty.

A. "His Britannic Majesty acknowledges the said United States, viz., New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia, to be free, sovereign, and independent States."

Q. With what other powers did England make peace at the same time?

A. With France, Spain, and Holland.

Q. What country did England cede to Spain at this time?

A. Her possessions in East and West Florida.

Q. What was the last post evacuated by the British?

A. The city of New York.

Q. On what day did the evacuation of New York take place?

A. On the 25th of November, 1783.

Q. When had the British posts in the South been abandoned?

A. In the previous year.

CHAPTER X.

The Formation of the Federal Constitution.—The Election of Washington as President.

Q. WHAT was the feeling of the American people at the achievement of the independence of the States?

A. There was throughout the whole country a feeling of unbounded joy and enthusiasm.

Q. Did they, however, realize at once all the blessings which they had hoped would follow the achievement of their independence?

A. They did not; for new troubles arose, which disturbed the minds of the wisest and best statesmen of that day.

Q. What were some of the causes of these troubles?

A. The state of the army, and the destitute condition of the treasury and of the country at large.

Q. What efforts did Congress make?

A. Congress made every effort to provide for the pressing wants of both the men and the officers of the army.

Q. Until what time was the army kept together?

A. Until after the British evacuated New York City, which was on the 25th of November, 1783.

Q. When did Washington take leave of his officers?

A. On the 4th of December.

Q. What did Washington do on the 23d of December?

A. He resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

Q. Where did this take place?

A. At Annapolis, Maryland, where Congress was in session.

Q. What was a great source of trouble, which was severely felt everywhere?

A. The great public debt which had been contracted during the war.

Q. To whom was this debt due?

A. Some of it was due to citizens of the United States, and a large amount was due to Holland and France.

Q. What was required in order to meet the interest on this debt?

A. Heavy taxation was required.

Q. Upon whom did this bear most heavily?

A. Upon the laboring classes.

Q. What was the result of this heavy taxation in Massachusetts?

A. It caused a rebellion, styled Shays's Rebellion, from the name of the leader in it.

Q. How was this rebellion suppressed?

A. By the firmness of Governor Bowdoin and the activity of General Lincoln.

Q. Was any one punished for participation in this rebellion?

A. No one was punished.

Q. What did the Legislature of Virginia do in 1786?

A. It recommended a Convention of the States to regulate commerce.

Q. How many States responded to this call?

A. Only five.

Q. Which were they?

A. New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Virginia.

Q. Where did the Convention meet?

A. At Annapolis, in Maryland.

Q. When did they meet?

A. On the 11th of September, 1786.

Q. What was done by this Convention?

A. Nothing, except to recommend a general Convention of all the States to assemble at Philadelphia in May, 1787.

Q. Why did they desire this Convention to be held?

A. Because they saw that the Articles of Confederation did not answer the purpose for which they were intended.

Q. What did Congress do on the 21st of February, 1787?

A. Congress recommended the assembling of the proposed Convention.

Q. Did the States respond to this call?

A. All the States responded except Rhode Island.

Q. When did the general Convention for a revision of the Articles of Union assemble?

A. On the 14th of May, 1787.

Q. What can you say of this Convention?

A. It consisted of some of the ablest statesmen that ever assembled in America.

Q. Who was elected President of the Convention?

A. George Washington.

Q. What was the great evil under the Articles of Confederation?

A. Many of the laws of the Union applied only to States, and did not act directly upon the people.

Q. When the Congress enacted that certain amounts of money should be raised by the States respectively, on what did the collection of the amounts depend?

A. It depended upon the subsequent action of the State Legislatures.

Q. Who suggested a remedy for this evil?

A. Thomas Jefferson, who was at that time Minister to France, proposed a remedy for this evil, in a letter to Mr. Madison.

Q. Into how many departments did he propose that the powers conferred upon the Federal Government should be divided?

A. Into three: Legislative, Executive, and Judiciary.

Q. What else did he propose?

A. That the laws of the Union should, within certain prescribed limits, act directly upon individuals.

Q. Was Jefferson's advice with reference to this division of Federal powers adopted?

A. It was.

Q. How long was this Convention in session?

A. Four months, during which time several plans were discussed.

Q. What was the result of the four months' work of the Convention?

A. The result was the formation of the present Constitution of the United States.

Q. According to the Constitution thus formed, what is the Executive of the United States styled?



WASHINGTON.

A. He is styled President.

Q. Of what does the Congress consist?

A. It consists of two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives.

Q. How are Representatives apportioned among the several States?

A. According to the population of the several States.

Q. By whom are the Representatives elected?

A. By the people directly.

Q. How many Senators has each State?

A. Each State has two Senators.

Q. How are Senators elected?

A. By the State Legislatures.

Q. If a bill is proposed in either house of Congress, what is necessary before it can become a law?

A. It must be passed by a majority of both the Senate and the House of Representatives, and receive the sanction of the President.

Q. If the President vetoes or refuses to approve the bill, what is necessary before it can become a law?

A. It must be passed again by a two-thirds majority of both houses.

Q. In what is the judicial power of the United States vested?

A. In one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish.

Q. What powers were delegated by the States to the Federal Government?

A. Such powers as would give to the Federal Government the right to control in matters pertaining to the general interests of all the States.

Q. What did the States reserve to themselves?

A. They reserved to themselves the right to manage their domestic affairs in their own way, with the proviso that no law of a State should be in conflict with the Constitution of the United States.

Q. Under the Articles of Confederation, what was necessary before any amendment could be adopted?

A. It was necessary to obtain the consent of all the States.

Q. Is this the case under the Constitution?

A. It is not.

Q. How may an amendment to the Constitution be adopted?

A. By the consent of three-fourths of the States.

Q. With what proviso was this change made?

A. With the proviso that no amendment should ever be made which would deprive any State of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

Q. As the Constitution was different in some important respects from the Articles of Confederation, what was further agreed upon by the Convention?

A. It was agreed that when nine of the thirteen States should ratify the Constitution it should be established between those nine States.

Q. What was this equivalent to?

A. This was equivalent to breaking up the old Union and forming a new one.

Q. When the Constitution was submitted to the several States, did it receive their immediate approval?

A. It did not, but it met with much opposition in several of them.

Q. When was it ratified by most of the States?

A. Before the close of the year 1788.

Q. What two States refused to ratify?

A. North Carolina and Rhode Island.

Q. With what provision did Virginia ratify the Constitution?

A. With the provision that she should be permitted to withdraw from the Union whenever the powers of the Federal Government should be used for oppression.

Q. According to the terms of the plan proposed, when was the new government to go into operation?

A. On the 4th of March, 1789.

Q. Who was elected first President of the United States under the government thus formed?

A. George Washington, of Virginia.

Q. Who was elected Vice-President?

A. John Adams, of Massachusetts.

Q. Upon what did the United States now enter?

A. Upon a more prosperous and brilliant career.

Q. When was Washington inaugurated as President of the United States?

A. On the 30th of April, 1789.

Q. Where?

A. In the city of New York.

Q. How long did the first session of Congress under the new organization continue?

A. Nearly six months.

Q. Early in 1790, at the second session of the new Congress, what gratifying fact did Washington announce?

A. That North Carolina had acceded to the Constitution of 1787, and was once more a member of the American Union.

Q. When did he have the pleasure of announcing the like accession of the State of Rhode Island?

A. On the 1st of June of the same year.

GENERAL REVIEW.

We will now briefly review the history of the United States from the close of the French and Indian War to the establishment of their independence and the formation of the Federal Constitution. Soon after the close of the French and Indian War the Colonies found ¹*that their hopes of tranquillity were not to be realized.* ²*The determination of the Parliament of Great Britain to tax the Colonies* caused the greatest discontent and excitement among all classes of the people. The Americans claimed ³*that taxation and representation ought to go together*, and that ⁴*it was unjust for a Parliament, in which they were not represented, to*

lay taxes upon them. ⁵ *The determination of the Parliament to persevere in their scheme of taxation, and the determination of the people of the Colonies not to submit to such taxation, finally led to open war.* ⁶ *On the 19th of April, 1775, a little more than twelve years after the close of the French and Indian War, occurred the battle of Lexington, in Massachusetts, which was the beginning of the long and bloody struggle for independence.* ⁷ *When the Colonies first took up arms they had no thought of independence, but when the war had continued for many months and it became evident that the Government of Great Britain was determined to persevere in its course of oppression, ⁸the wish to obtain a redress of grievances was converted into a desire for independence.*

1. What did the Colonies soon after the close of the French and Indian War find out? 2. What caused great discontent? 3. What did the Americans claim? 4. What did they think was unjust? 5. What finally led to open war? 6. When did the battle of Lexington occur? 7. Did the Colonies aim at independence when they first took up arms? 8. What change took place in their feelings when it became evident that Great Britain was determined to persevere in her course of oppression?

Moreover, they were encouraged to take this step ⁹*by the brilliant successes which they had obtained over the British troops during the first months of the war.* ¹⁰ *The battle of Lexington had roused the people, from Massachusetts to Georgia; the battle of Bunker Hill, ¹¹though not an American victory, nevertheless had impressed the Colonies with the belief that the British troops were not invincible; the capture of the British forts along Lake Champlain, and the complete success of Washington's efforts to drive the British from Boston, ¹²encouraged the Americans in the belief that they could by proper efforts obtain their independence.* In June, 1776, while the representatives of the Colonies in Congress assembled were preparing to publish to the country and the world the celebrated declaration of independence, ¹³*a British fleet commanded by Admiral Sir Peter Parker, and a land force commanded by Sir Henry Clinton, were repulsed in an attempt to*

capture Fort Moultrie, which defended the entrance to the harbor of Charleston, in South Carolina.

9. By what were they encouraged to take this step? 10. What can you say of the battle of Lexington? 11. What of the battle of Bunker Hill? 12. What effect had the capture of the British forts along Lake Champlain, and the success of Washington at Boston, upon the minds of the people? 13. What happened in June, 1776?

¹⁴ *On the 4th of July, 1776, the Congress which was in session at Philadelphia declared the thirteen United Colonies to be free, sovereign, and independent States. The hall in which Congress was then assembled has ever since been known as* ¹⁵ *Independence Hall.*

The announcement of this declaration was received everywhere throughout the Colonies ¹⁶ *with every demonstration of joy.*

¹⁷ *Eight days after the adoption of this declaration, a plan of Union was proposed, embraced* ¹⁸ *in the Articles of Confederation.* This plan was accepted by most of the States ¹⁹ *as early as 1777;* but it was not until near the close of the war, ²⁰ *in 1781, that Maryland gave her full assent to it. Soon after the declaration of independence, disasters fell thick and fast upon the American arms.* ²¹ *Washington was defeated on Long Island and compelled to abandon New York; Fort Washington, with its garrison, was captured by the British; and the American army under Washington was obliged* ²² *to retreat across New Jersey, closely pressed by the victorious enemy.*

14. When did Congress declare the thirteen United Colonies to be free, sovereign, and independent States? 15. What has the hall in which Congress was then assembled been called ever since? 16. How was the announcement of the declaration of independence received throughout the Colonies? 17. When was a plan of Union proposed? 18. In what was this plan embraced? 19. When was this accepted by most of the States? 20. When did Maryland give her full assent to it? 21. What disasters befell the American arms soon after the declaration of independence? 22. What was the American army under Washington obliged to do?

At length ²³ *the American army reached the Delaware River, and crossed over into Pennsylvania.* While the whole country

was filled with gloom by these sad reverses, Washington revived the drooping hopes of the people ²⁴ *by his two brilliant victories at Trenton and Princeton.* Soon after ²⁵ *he recovered the greater part of New Jersey from the British.*

During the fall of 1777 ²⁶ *the Americans were defeated on the Brandywine and at Germantown, Philadelphia fell into the hands of the enemy,* and during the winter which followed ²⁷ *the American army suffered great hardships in the camp at Valley Forge;* but all these reverses were more than counterbalanced ²⁸ *by the great success at Saratoga on the 17th of October, 1777,* where General Gates, with an army of thirteen thousand men, captured ²⁹ *nearly six thousand of the best troops of England, commanded by General Burgoyne.* This great success secured for the Americans ³⁰ *the alliance of France.* In consequence of the sailing of a French fleet for the American coast, ³¹ *Philadelphia was abandoned by the enemy,* and the British troops were ordered to concentrate ³² *at New York.* On their retreat through New Jersey ³³ *the British were assailed at Monmouth by the Americans, commanded by Washington.* In this battle ³⁴ *the forces of the United States gained the advantage.* At the close of the year 1778 the British found themselves no nearer conquering their revolted Colonies than when they first began the attempt. The only success which they had obtained during the year was ³⁵ *the capture of Savannah, in Georgia.*

23. What river did the American army reach, and into what State did they retreat? 24. How did Washington revive the drooping hopes of the people? 25. What happened soon after? 26. What happened during the fall of 1777? 27. What during the winter which followed? 28. By what were these reverses more than counterbalanced? 29. How many British soldiers surrendered on this occasion? 30. What did this success secure for the Americans? 31. What happened in consequence of the sailing of a French fleet for the American coast? 32. Where were the British troops ordered to concentrate? 33. What happened on their retreat through New Jersey? 34. Who had the advantage in this battle? 35. What was the only success obtained by the British during the year 1778?

During the year 1779 the British ³⁶ *continued active operations*

both in the North and in the South. In February ³⁷the Americans gained a victory at Kettle Creek, in Georgia, but in March ³⁸they were defeated by the British at Brier Creek. In May, ³⁹General Clinton, in command of a British force, captured Stony Point, on the Hudson, in New York, and on the 1st of June ⁴⁰he captured Verplanck's Point. ⁴¹In the middle of July the Americans, under General Wayne, recaptured Stony Point, gaining a brilliant victory; and a few days afterwards ⁴²a British garrison at Paulus Hook, New Jersey, was captured by the Americans, led by Major Henry Lee.

36. What did the British do during the year 1779? 37. What happened in February? 38. What happened in March? 39. What success did the British obtain in May? 40. What in June? 41. What victory did the Americans obtain in July? 42. What happened a few days afterwards?

In September and October of this year ⁴³a combined French and American army, commanded by General Lincoln, laid siege to Savannah, Georgia. The siege was terminated ⁴⁴by an assault, in which the French and Americans were repulsed with terrible loss. During the year 1779 ⁴⁵Spain also declared war against England.

⁴⁶The year 1780 was a gloomy one for the Americans. In May, ⁴⁷Charleston, in South Carolina, was captured, together with an American army commanded by General Lincoln; in August occurred ⁴⁸the disastrous battle of Camden, in South Carolina, by which another American army was almost destroyed; and in September, ⁴⁹General Arnold, who had formerly been ⁵⁰one of the most zealous defenders of American liberty, was detected in a disgraceful plot to betray West Point, in New York, into the hands of the British. The discovery of ⁵¹the treason of Arnold filled the Americans with gloom; for ⁵²they felt that they knew not whom to trust, when such a man as Arnold had been could prove to be a traitor to his country.

The disasters of this year were somewhat relieved ⁵³by the important victory at King's Mountain, and by a few brilliant suc-

cesses obtained in the Carolinas and in Georgia by such leaders as Marion, Sumter, and Clarke. On the 20th of December of this year England declared war against ⁵⁴ Holland, because ⁵⁵ the Hollanders had given protection to American privateers, and had actually begun to negotiate a treaty with Congress.

43. What happened in September and October of this year? 44. How was the siege terminated? 45. What nation declared war against England in 1779? 46. What can you say of the year 1780? 47. What happened in May? 48. What in August? 49. Who was discovered in September in a disgraceful plot to betray West Point, in New York, into the hands of the British? 50. What had Arnold formerly been? 51. What effect had the treason of Arnold upon the Americans? 52. Why? 53. By what were the disasters of this year somewhat relieved? 54. With what other power did England become involved in war in December, 1780? 55. Why did England declare war against Holland?

Although in the beginning of 1781 the prospect was gloomy for the Americans, yet before the close of the year the independence of the States was secured. With the exception of the predatory excursions of the traitor Arnold and the British general Phillips in the North, active operations were for the most part confined to ⁵⁶ *the Carolinas and Georgia*. Early in the campaign the Americans were cheered by ⁵⁷ *the important victory at the Cowpens*; then followed ⁵⁸ *the retreat of General Greene through North Carolina*, followed ⁵⁹ *by his return into that State and his battle with Lord Cornwallis at Guilford Court-House*. In this battle ⁶⁰ *the British had the advantage, but they were unable to profit by it*.

In a few days after the fight, ⁶¹ *Cornwallis retreated, pursued by Greene*. Cornwallis retired ⁶² *to Wilmington*, while ⁶³ *Greene, at the head of the American army, advanced into South Carolina*. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, ⁶⁴ *the American general was attacked by Lord Rawdon, and, after a desperate resistance, was forced to retire*. As at Guilford, so in this instance ⁶⁵ *the British commander was unable to improve his victory*. In fifteen days after this battle ⁶⁶ *Lord Rawdon retired beyond the Santee*. He was impelled to this step ⁶⁷ *by the skillful movements of General*

Greene, who, sending out detachments from his army to co-operate with General Marion and the Carolina militia, had captured ⁶⁸*Fort Watson* and was closely besieging *Forts Mott, Granby, and Orangeburg*, which were finally captured. In June another detachment from *Greene's* army, commanded by Colonel Henry Lee, co-operating with the Carolina and Georgia militia under Pickens and Clarke, ⁶⁹*captured the British garrison at Augusta*, which ⁷⁰*freed the upper portion of Georgia from the presence of the enemy*. In the same month the British post at Ninety-Six was assaulted, but ⁷¹*the Americans were repulsed*. Soon after, however, ⁷²*the British abandoned the post, on account of its isolated condition*.

56. During the year 1781, to what portion of the country were active operations for the most part confined? 57. What victory did the Americans gain early in the campaign? 58. What happened soon after? 59. By what was *Greene's* retreat followed? 60. What can you say of this battle? 61. What happened a few days after the fight? 62. To what place did Cornwallis retire? 63. What did *Greene* do? 64. What happened at Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden? 65. Was the British commander able to profit by his victory? 66. What did Lord Rawdon do in fifteen days after this battle? 67. By what was he impelled to this step? 68. What forts were captured by the Americans? 69. What did the Americans, commanded by Pickens, Lee, and Clarke, do in June? 70. What was the result of this victory? 71. What was the result of the assault on the British post at Ninety-Six? 72. What happened soon after?

In September, 1781, ⁷³*Greene, by his important victory at Eutaw Springs, rescued the States of Carolina and Georgia from the grasp of the enemy*, and confined the British troops to ⁷⁴*the cities of Charleston and Savannah*. Lord Cornwallis, in the mean while, ⁷⁵*had marched into Virginia, where he did much damage both to public and to private property*. In June he took post ⁷⁶*at Yorktown*. In the last of September, Washington, at the head of the combined French and United States forces, amounting to more than sixteen thousand men, assisted by a French fleet which blockaded the James and York Rivers, ⁷⁷*besieged Cornwallis in his fortifications at Yorktown*. ⁷⁸*On the 19th of October, Cornwallis surrendered his army, comprising* ⁷⁹*a little more than seven*

thousand of the best troops in the British army. The news of this glorious victory was received ⁸⁰*with great rejoicing throughout the United States*, for the people everywhere felt that peace was at hand.

The British Government, after this crushing defeat, ⁸¹*gave up all hope of conquering America.* ⁸²*Four commissioners* on the part of the United States and ⁸³*five* on the part of Great Britain met at ⁸⁴*Paris*, and ⁸⁵*on the 30th of November, 1782*, signed a provisional treaty of peace. ⁸⁶*On the 3d of September, 1783, at Paris*, the final treaty of peace was signed.

73. What happened in September, 1781? 74. To what were the British forces henceforth confined? 75. While these things were occurring, what had Lord Cornwallis done? 76. Where did he take post in June? 77. What did the combined French and United States forces, assisted by the French fleet, do in September? 78. When did Cornwallis surrender his army? 79. What did this army comprise? 80. How was the news of this great victory received? 81. What of the British Government after this defeat? 82. How many commissioners were appointed on the part of the United States to negotiate a treaty of peace? 83. How many on the part of Great Britain? 84. Where did they meet? 85. When was a provisional treaty of peace signed? 86. When and where was the final treaty of peace signed?

Soon after the close of the war it became evident ⁸⁷*that the Union could not be preserved unless the Articles of Confederation could be amended in some way.* The first effort to secure a Convention of the States failed, only ⁸⁸*four* responding. ⁸⁹*The second effort was more successful*; and on the ⁹⁰*14th of May, 1787*, the Convention assembled ⁹¹*in Philadelphia* which formed ⁹²*the Constitution of the United States.* In this Convention ⁹³*all the States were represented except Rhode Island.* ⁹⁴*On the 30th of April, 1789*, the new government went into operation, and ⁹⁵*George Washington* was inaugurated as President of the United States.

Two of the States, ⁹⁶*North Carolina and Rhode Island*, refused to ratify, so that at first the Union under the new Constitution embraced but eleven States. But ⁹⁷*at the close of 1789* North Carolina ratified the Constitution and came into the Union,

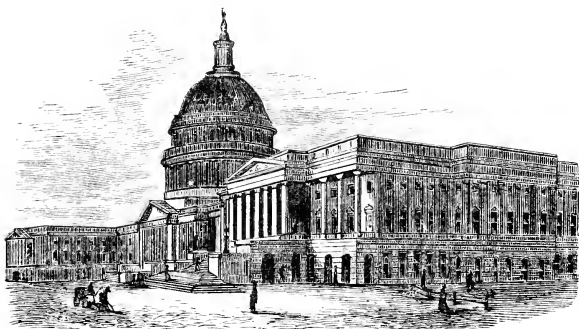
and ⁹⁸ *in the early part of 1790* Rhode Island also acceded to the new Constitution and resumed her place as a member of the Federal Union. On this occasion ⁹⁹ *Washington congratulated the Congress, then in session, on the happy event which "united under the General Government all the States which were originally confederated."*

¹⁰⁰ *The United States now entered upon a long career of prosperity.*

87. What became evident soon after the close of the war? 88. How many States responded to the first call for a Convention? 89. What can you say of the second effort? 90. When did the Convention assemble? 91. Where? 92. What was formed by this Convention? 93. What States were represented in this Convention? 94. When did the new government go into operation? 95. Who was inaugurated as President of the United States? 96. What two States refused to ratify? 97. When did North Carolina ratify the Constitution? 98. When did Rhode Island ratify? 99. What did Washington do when he announced to Congress the ratification of the Constitution by Rhode Island? 100. Upon what did the United States now enter?

PART THIRD.

FROM THE ADMINISTRATION OF WASHINGTON TO THE YEAR
1872.



CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

CHAPTER I.

Washington's Administration.

Q. How long did the first session of the First Congress under the new Constitution continue?

A. Nearly six months.

Q. What were among the first things that engaged the attention of Congress?

A. Certain amendments to the Constitution, which had been insisted on by most of the States at the time of its ratification.

Q. How many amendments were proposed to the States by this Congress and soon after adopted by the States?

A. Ten.

Q. What was organized by the Congress?

A. The Federal Judiciary.

Q. What subordinate executive offices were established?

A. The offices of Secretary of State, Secretary of the Treasury, Secretary of War, and Attorney-General.

Q. Who was nominated by Washington and confirmed by the Senate as Secretary of State?

A. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia.

Q. Who was in like manner appointed Secretary of the Treasury?

A. Colonel Alexander Hamilton, of New York.

Q. Who was made Secretary of War?

A. General Henry Knox, of Massachusetts.

Q. Who was appointed Attorney-General?

A. Edmund Randolph, of Virginia.

Q. What did these four officers constitute?

A. They constituted the President's Cabinet.

Q. What happened at the second session of this First Congress, in February, 1790, which excited the alarm of all true friends of the federal system?

A. A petition was sent to Congress urging the federal authorities to adopt measures looking to the ultimate abolition of African slavery throughout the Union.

Q. By whom was this petition headed?

A. By Dr. Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania.

Q. Why were the friends of the federal system alarmed at this movement?

A. Because it called for the exercise of powers not delegated by the States to the General Government.

Q. How was the question settled for the time?

A. By the passage of a resolution that Congress had no authority to interfere in the emancipation of slaves.

Q. What act was passed at this session of Congress?

A. An act was passed changing the seat of the Federal Government.

Q. At what place was the seat of government to be located for ten years after 1790?

A. At Philadelphia, in Pennsylvania.

Q. After the first Monday in December, 1800, where was the seat of government to be permanently established?

A. Within a district of territory not exceeding ten miles square, situated on the eastern bank of the Potomac.

Q. What name was given to the territory which was ceded for this purpose?

A. The District of Columbia.

Q. What name was given to the seat of government itself?

A. It was named Washington.

Q. What occurred during the year 1790?

A. Indian troubles began to manifest themselves among the Creeks in Georgia, and also among the tribes west of the Ohio.

Q. How was the difficulty with the Creeks settled?

A. The chiefs of the Creeks were induced to visit New York, where a treaty was made with them by Washington.

Q. Were the troubles in the Northwestern Territory as amicably settled?

A. They were not; but the depredations of the Indians continued.

Q. What is meant by the Northwestern Territory?

A. That portion of the country lying between the Ohio River and the Mississippi, which latter river at that time constituted the western boundary of the United States.

Q. What can you say of this Territory?

A. Several of the States had claims to it; though by far the larger portion was within the limits of Virginia.

Q. To what had the conflicting claims of the different States to this Territory led?

A. To serious embarrassment.

Q. How was the difficulty met by the States having claims to this Territory?

A. Soon after the close of the war for independence they made a cession of these lands to the control of the General Government.

Q. With what stipulation did Virginia couple the surrender of her claims?

A. That there should be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said Territory, except as a punishment for crime.

Q. What more can you say of this Territory?

A. It was rapidly filling up with settlers.

Q. How were these settlers annoyed?

A. By the frequent incursions of the Indians.

Q. To what did the depredations of the Indians finally lead?

A. To open war.

Q. Who was sent against the Indians in 1790?

A. General Harmer, with about fifteen hundred men

Q. What of his expedition?

A. He burned several Indian towns; but in October he was defeated in two battles, and was then removed from command.

Q. Who was appointed to succeed him?

A. General St. Clair.

Q. Did he succeed any better?

A. He did not.

Q. What happened on the 4th of November, 1791?

A. His army was surprised and routed with great slaughter.

Q. What State had been admitted into the Union during February of this same year?

A. Vermont.



SEAL OF VERMONT.

Q. By what two States had Vermont been claimed?

A. By New Hampshire and New York.

Q. How was this difference of claim settled?

A. Both States relinquished all claim to Vermont, and it was made a separate State.

Q. What act was passed by Congress in October, 1791?

A. An act providing for the organization and discipline of the militia of the several States.

Q. What act was passed at the same session which caused great discontent among certain classes?

A. An act imposing an excise on distilled spirits.

Q. Where did the people openly resist the collection of this tax?

A. In the western part of Pennsylvania.

Q. What did Congress do in May, 1792?

A. The Congress passed an act authorizing the President to call out the militia.

Q. When peaceful measures failed to produce the desired result, what did Washington do?

A. He called out fifteen thousand of the militia, and placed them under the command of General Henry Lee.

Q. What was the effect of this display of force?

A. The insurgents dispersed, and the "Whisky Insurrection," as it was called, was at an end.

Q. What new State was admitted into the Union on the 2d of June, 1792?

A. Kentucky.



SEAL OF KENTUCKY.

Q. Of what State had Kentucky been originally a part?

A. Of Virginia.

Q. Was Kentucky embraced in the Northwestern Territory?

A. It was not.

Q. Was African slavery allowed in Kentucky?

A. It was.

Q. What took place in the fall of 1792?

A. Another Presidential election took place.

Q. With what result?

A. Washington was unanimously re-elected.

Q. Who was elected Vice-President?

A. John Adams was again elected Vice-President.

Q. What had an important bearing on the politics of the United States at this time?

A. The French Revolution, and the wars growing out of it.

Q. What was the feeling of a large majority of the people of the United States?

A. It was one of sympathy for the French.

Q. What did this sympathy produce?

A. It produced a strong desire to assist France in the conflict.

Q. What was the policy of Washington?

A. His policy was to remain neutral.

Q. Who arrived at Charleston, South Carolina, in April, 1793?

A. Genet, Minister of the French Republic to the United States.

Q. What did Genet endeavor to do?

A. He endeavored to excite the people to hostile acts against Great Britain.

Q. In consequence of the conduct of Genet, what did Washington do?

A. He demanded his recall.

Q. Was Washington's demand complied with?

A. It was.

Q. Who was appointed to succeed Genet?

A. Fauchet.

Q. What happened in the fall of 1793?

A. General Wayne moved against the Indians of the Northwest, and, advancing as far as the scene of St. Clair's defeat, built Fort Recovery, where he passed the winter.

Q. What did he do during the next spring and summer?

A. He advanced farther into the interior, and built Fort Defiance.

Q. What occurred on the 20th of August?

A. He fought a battle with the Indians, and totally defeated them.

Q. What did he then do?

A. He laid waste their country, and compelled them to make peace.

Q. What did Washington do in 1794?

A. He sent John Jay as a special envoy to England.

Q. Why did he do this?

A. For the reason that the feeling in the United States was very bitter against England because British troops continued to hold the forts on Lake Erie and vicinity, and American merchant vessels on their way to French ports were seized and their seamen violently taken from them.

Q. What was the result of Mr. Jay's mission?

A. A treaty was made, by which war was averted and the honor of the United States was maintained.

Q. With what other power was a treaty concluded?

A. With Spain.

Q. What boundaries were definitively settled by the treaty?

A. The boundaries between Louisiana and Florida and the United States.

Q. What was granted by Spain?

A. The right to navigate the Mississippi, and the privilege of using New Orleans as a place of deposit for ten years.

Q. With what other power was a treaty made about this time?

A. With Algiers, a Barbary power on the northern coast of Africa.

Q. What was accomplished by this treaty?

A. The release of captive citizens of the United States who were held by that country.

Q. Who came to the United States as French Minister in January, 1795?

A. M. Adet.

Q. How did Adet behave?

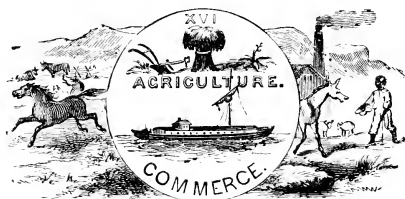
A. He behaved worse than Genet had done, and accused the federal administration of acting in bad faith towards their former allies, the French.

Q. Did his efforts avail anything?

A. They did not; because the people had the utmost confidence in Washington.

Q. What State was admitted into the Union on the 1st of June, 1796?

A. The State of Tennessee.



SEAL OF TENNESSEE.

Q. Of what had Tennessee originally formed a part

A. Of North Carolina.

Q. What happened in the fall of 1796?

A. Another Presidential election.

Q. What did the people desire?

A. That Washington should consent to be President for a third term; but he refused.

Q. Who was elected President?

A. John Adams, of Massachusetts.

Q. Who was elected Vice-President?

A. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia.

Q. How long had Washington been President?

Eight years.

CHAPTER II.

Administration of John Adams.

Q. WHEN was John Adams inaugurated as President of the United States?

A. On the 4th of March, 1797.

Q. Where did the inauguration take place?

A. At Philadelphia.

Q. What first occupied the attention of the new administration?

A. The difficulties existing between France and the United States.

Q. What was done by the administration for the purpose of bringing about a friendly settlement of these difficulties?

A. Three special envoys were sent to France.

Q. Who were these envoys?

A. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, of South Carolina, Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, and John Marshall, of Virginia.

Q. How were they treated in France?

A. The French Minister of Foreign Affairs refused to receive them in their official capacity.

Q. On what condition did the French Minister offer to recognize them in their public capacity?

A. On condition of the previous payment of a large sum of money.

Q. What answer did Mr. Pinckney give to this proposition?

A. He declared that he was willing to give "millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute."

Q. What happened soon after?

A. The envoys were ordered by the French Government to leave France.

Q. How long did the session of Congress, which began on the 13th of December, continue?

A. More than eight months.

Q. Mention some of the acts passed at this session of Congress.

A. Acts were passed for the protection of navigation, for the defense of the sea-coast, and for increasing the land and naval forces, and also what are known as the Alien and Sedition Acts.

Q. What can you say of the Alien and Sedition Acts?

A. They created great discontent and indignation.

Q. By the Alien Act, what was the President authorized to do?

A. He was authorized to order any foreigner, whom he might believe to be dangerous to the United States, to depart from the country under a heavy penalty for refusing to obey the order.

Q. What was the Sedition Act?

A. It was an act making it a crime, with a heavy penalty, to write, print, or utter anything scandalous against the Congress or President of the United States.

Q. What was done with reference to France?

A. All treaties with France were declared to be abrogated, and all commercial intercourse with that country was declared suspended.

Q. What was done in anticipation of a war with France?

A. George Washington was again appointed commander-in-chief.

Q. Was actual war ever declared by either France or the United States?

A. It was not.

Q. What did happen, however?

A. Several engagements took place between their ships of war.

Q. What occurred in April, 1798?

A. Decatur, in command of the Delaware, captured a French privateer.

Q. What was done with this vessel?

A. It was added to the United States navy and called the Retaliation; but it was soon afterwards retaken by the French.

Q. What was done by Commodore Truxton on the 9th of February, 1799?

A. In command of the United States frigate *Constellation*, he captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*.

Q. What other French vessel did he encounter on the 1st of February, 1800?

A. He encountered the French frigate *La Vengeance* and silenced its batteries; but the frigate succeeded in making its escape.

Q. How many French merchant vessels became the prizes of American privateers before the war ended?

A. Fifty.

Q. When was the war closed?

A. In October, 1801.

Q. How was it closed?

A. By a treaty with Napoleon Bonaparte, who had become First Consul.

Q. Before the conclusion of peace, what sad event occurred?

A. George Washington died, at Mount Vernon.

Q. When did this happen?

A. On the 14th of December, 1799.

Q. What did General Henry Lee say of Washington in the eulogy which he pronounced upon his character?

A. He said of him that he was "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

Q. What is Washington often styled?

A. The Father of his Country.

Q. When did another Presidential election take place?

A. In the fall of 1800.

Q. Into what two parties had the people of the United States become divided?

A. Into Federalists and Republicans, or Democrats.

Q. Who was the leader of the Federalists?

A. John Adams, the President.

Q. Who was the leader of the Republicans, or Democrats?

A. Thomas Jefferson, the Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election of 1800?

A. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr, the candidates of the

Republican party for President and Vice-President, received an equal number of votes, and, as the Constitution then stood, the election devolved upon the House of Representatives.

Q. What was the result of the election in the House?

A. Jefferson was elected President, and Burr Vice-President.

CHAPTER III.

Administration of Thomas Jefferson.

Q. WHEN was Mr. Jefferson inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1801.

Q. Where did the inaugural ceremonies take place?

A. In the city of Washington, at the new Capitol.

Q. What was one of the first objects that attracted the attention of Mr. Jefferson?

A. The securing from Spain for the people of the United States of the free navigation of the Mississippi River.

Q. What information did he receive in 1802?

A. He was informed that Spain had by a secret treaty, in 1800, ceded Louisiana to France.

Q. Upon receiving this information, what did Mr. Jefferson do?

A. He sent Mr. Monroe as a special minister to France to treat upon the subject.

Q. With whom was Mr. Monroe to act in concert?

A. With Mr. Livingston, the United States Resident Minister at Paris.

Q. What did they find that Bonaparte was willing to do?

A. They found Bonaparte willing to treat not only for the free navigation of the Mississippi, but also for the cession of the entire Louisiana Territory.

Q. What treaty was made on the 30th of April, 1803?

A. A treaty by which France ceded to the United States the Louisiana Territory for the sum of fifteen million dollars.

Q. What did this Territory embrace?

A. The vast region lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains.

Q. What else can you say of this region?

A. Several of the most flourishing States of the Union were formed out of this Territory.

Q. What can you say of the treaty by which this extensive purchase was secured?

A. It added greatly to the popularity of Jefferson's administration.

Q. What was done by the State of Georgia in 1803?

A. In 1803 Georgia ceded to the control of the General Government nearly one hundred thousand square miles of territory between the Chattahoochee and Mississippi Rivers.

Q. What two States were many years afterwards formed out of this territory?

A. The States of Alabama and Mississippi.

Q. What State was admitted into the Union on the 19th of February, 1803?

A. The State of Ohio.



SEAL OF OHIO.

Q. In what war did the United States become involved in 1803?

A. In a war with the Barbary Powers.

Q. Where are the Barbary Powers?

A. In the northern part of Africa, along the shores of the Mediterranean Sea.

Q. What was the cause of this war?

A. The depredations committed on American commerce.

Q. Who was sent to the Mediterranean in command of an American squadron?

A. Commodore Preble.

Q. What was done by Commodore Preble?

A. He brought the Emperor of Morocco to terms, and began to act against Tripoli.

Q. What happened while the American squadron was near Tripoli?

A. The *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, got aground in the harbor and was captured by the Tripolitans, but was retaken and destroyed by Lieutenant Decatur.

Q. Who succeeded Commodore Preble in command of the American squadron?

A. Commodore Barron.

Q. With what success did he meet?

A. In concert with Captain Eaton, who commanded a land force, he captured Derne, and soon after compelled the Bashaw to make peace.

Q. What was secured by the treaty?

A. The safety of American commerce, and the restoration to liberty of several American citizens who had been held as slaves by the Tripolitan pirates.

Q. When was this treaty signed?

A. On the 4th of June, 1805.

Q. While these events were transpiring, what had occurred?

A. Another Presidential election.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Thomas Jefferson was elected President, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-President.

Q. What happened in 1804, which caused Colonel Burr, at that time Vice-President, to lose the popularity and influence he had formerly enjoyed?

A. He killed Colonel Hamilton in a duel, and the circumstances

under which this duel was fought were such as to bring great odium upon Colonel Burr.

Q. Was he ever again honored by the people with any office of profit or trust?

A. He was not.

Q. What else can you say of Colonel Burr?

A. He subsequently was engaged in planning a military expedition of some sort, and, as his designs were suspected of being against the peace of the United States, he was tried for treason.

Q. What was the result of the trial?

A. He was acquitted; but he was from that time a ruined man.

Q. When was Mr. Jefferson inaugurated as President for a second time?

A. On the 4th of March, 1805.

Q. What soon demanded the attention of the President?

A. The injuries to American commerce growing out of the war between England and France.

Q. How did this war affect American commerce?

A. The English Government issued "Orders in Council" authorizing the seizure of vessels bound for any French port, while the Government of France issued "Decrees" confiscating all ships with their cargoes that should trade at British ports.

Q. What happened in June, 1807, which greatly aroused the feelings of the Americans against England?

A. The British ship of war *Leopard*, without provocation, fired into the American frigate *Chesapeake*, killing three of her men and wounding eighteen more.

Q. What allayed the indignation of the Americans and prevented an immediate declaration of war?

A. The British Government disavowed the act of the officer commanding the *Leopard*.

Q. For what is the year 1807 especially remarkable?

A. For the first successful application of steam to the propulsion of vessels.

Q. Who was the author of this important improvement?

A. Robert Fulton, of New York.

Q. What act was passed by Congress in December, 1807?

A. An act prohibiting all American trading-vessels from leaving their ports.

Q. What was this act called?

A. It was called the Embargo Act.

Q. What was the effect of this act in the New England States?

A. It caused great dissatisfaction in the New England States.

Q. What information did Jefferson receive towards the close of his second term?

A. He received information (which he believed reliable) that some of the New England States would withdraw from the Union unless the embargo should be repealed.

Q. What did Mr. Jefferson do with the view of promoting harmony between the States?

A. He recommended the repeal of the Embargo Act.

Q. Was his recommendation carried out by Congress?

A. It was.

Q. When did another Presidential election take place?

A. In November, 1808.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Federal party?

A. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney for President, and Rufus King for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Republican, or Democratic party?

A. James Madison, of Virginia, for President, and George Clinton, of New York, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Madison was elected President, and Clinton Vice-President.

CHAPTER IV.

Administration of James Madison.

Q. WHEN did the inauguration of James Madison take place?

A. On the 4th of March, 1809.

Q. What act was passed in the place of the Embargo Act just before Mr. Jefferson's retirement?

A. The Non-Intercourse Act.

Q. What was this act?

A. It was an act declaring that United States shipping should be free to trade with all countries except England and France.

Q. When was this prohibition to cease?

A. It was to cease as to England whenever the British Government should repeal the "Orders in Council," and in the case of France whenever the "Decrees" should be repealed.

Q. What assurance did Mr. Erskine (the British Minister at Washington) give to Mr. Madison soon after he became President?

A. Mr. Erskine gave assurance that the "Orders in Council" would be annulled.

Q. What proclamation was thereupon issued by the President?

A. He issued a proclamation suspending the Non-Intercourse Act so far as it related to England.

Q. What happened soon after?

A. The British Government informed President Madison that Mr. Erskine had acted without authority.

Q. What was then done by the President?

A. The Non-Intercourse Act was again declared to be in force.

Q. What information did the United States Minister at Paris receive in 1810?

A. That the "Decrees" of the French Government would cease to have effect after the 1st of November of that year.

Q. What was done in consequence of this action on the part of the French Government?

A. The Non-Intercourse Act was repealed so far as France was concerned, but continued as to Great Britain.

Q. Why was the act continued as to Great Britain?

A. Because that Government would not revoke the "Orders in Council."

Q. What happened on the 16th of May, 1811, which greatly increased the bitterness of feeling between the United States and England?

A. An engagement occurred between the American frigate *President* and the British sloop of war *Little Belt*.

Q. Relate the circumstances of this engagement.

A. Commodore Rogers, commanding the United States vessel, late in the evening met a vessel, which he hailed, but was answered by a shot which struck his mainmast. He answered this with several broadsides from his own deck, which soon disabled his adversary.

Q. When he hailed again, what answer did he receive?

A. He was informed that it was the British sloop of war *Little Belt*.

Q. What damage had the *Little Belt* received in this encounter?

A. She had been terribly injured, and had lost thirty-two men in killed and wounded.

Q. How was the feeling of hostility against England increased?

A. By Indian depredations in the Northwest, which were attributed to the instigations of British agents.

Q. Who was sent against the Indians of the Northwest?

A. General William Henry Harrison, Governor of the Territory of Indiana.

Q. Where and when did he have a battle with the Indians?

A. At Tippecanoe, in Indiana, on the 7th of November, 1811.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. The Indians were defeated with terrible slaughter.

Q. What was done by Congress in anticipation of a war with Great Britain?

A. Congress voted to increase the regular army to thirty-five thousand men, and to give the President authority to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers.

Q. What else did Congress provide for?

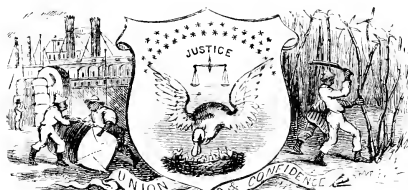
A. For a large increase of the navy.

Q. What did Congress do to meet the expenses of these measures?

A. Congress authorized a loan of eleven millions of dollars.

Q. What new State was admitted into the Union on the 8th of April, 1812?

A. The State of Louisiana, which was formed out of a part of the territory purchased from France.



SEAL OF LOUISIANA.

Q. What distinguished man died on the 20th of April?

A. George Clinton, the Vice-President of the United States.

Q. Who became Vice-President in his place?

A. William H. Crawford, of Georgia.

Q. What was done by the United States Government on the 18th of June, 1812?

A. War was declared against England, on account of the continued depredations on American commerce.

Q. What occurred a few months after the declaration of war?

A. Another Presidential election

Q. Who were the candidates of the administration party?

A. Mr. Madison for President, and Mr. Gerry for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the anti-administration party?

A. De Witt Clinton, of New York, for President, and Jared Ingersoll, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Mr. Madison was elected President, and Mr. Gerry Vice-President.

CHAPTER V.

Madison's Second Term.—War with Great Britain.

Q. WHEN was Madison inaugurated President for a second time?

A. On the 4th of March, 1813.

Q. How long had the war with Great Britain been going on at the time of Madison's second inauguration?

A. About eight months.

Q. What was the population of the United States when this second war with England commenced?

A. It was upwards of seven millions, or more than double the population of the States at the commencement of the Revolution.

Q. What did the people of the United States think?

A. They thought it would be an easy matter to bring England to terms by invading Canada.

Q. Did they expect to accomplish much by the navy?

A. They did not.

Q. Why?

A. Because they knew that the navy of England was far more powerful.

Q. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American armies?

A. General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts.

Q. What was especially intrusted to General Dearborn?

A. The conduct of the operations between Lake Erie and Lake Champlain.

Q. What general had charge under him of the Niagara frontier?

A. General Stephen Van Rensselaer.

Q. Who was to conduct the war in the Northwest?

A. General William Hull, at that time Governor of Michigan.

Q. What can you say of Hull's campaign?

A. In July, 1812, he left Detroit with about twenty-five hundred men to invade Canada, but, on being met by General Brock at the head of an inferior force of British and Indians, he retreated to Detroit, where he made a disgraceful surrender on the 16th of August.

Q. What was done with General Hull on account of this surrender?

A. He was court-martialed and sentenced to be shot.

Q. Why was not the sentence carried out?

A. The President pardoned him on account of former gallant services during the war of the Revolution.

Q. What was the result of Hull's surrender?

A. The whole Northwest was exposed to the invasion of the British and the depredations of the Indians.

Q. How many volunteers tended their services to the Government?

A. Not less than ten thousand.

Q. Under whose command were these volunteers placed?

A. Under the command of General William Henry Harrison, who succeeded Hull.

Q. What was done in October by General Van Rensselaer?

A. He sent about one thousand men across the Niagara River, to attack the British post at Queenstown, in Canada.

Q. Who led the troops to the assault?

A. Colonels Christie and Scott.

Q. With what success did they meet?

A. They captured the fort, and General Brock, coming up with a British reinforcement of six hundred men, was slain in an attempt to retake the post, and his men were repulsed with terrible slaughter.

Q. What happened soon after?

A. Another British reinforcement came up, and, after a bloody engagement, succeeded in recapturing the fort.

Q. What was General Van Rensselaer doing meanwhile?

A. He was on the other bank of the river, endeavoring to persuade the American militia to cross over to the assistance of their comrades.

Q. Upon what ground did they refuse?

A. On the ground that the Government had no right to send them across the frontier.

Q. What party in the United States defended their conduct?

A. The Federalists, who were opposed to the war.

Q. What did General Van Rensselaer do?

A. He resigned in disgust.

Q. Was he deserving of blame?

A. He was not.

Q. Who deserved the blame?

A. The militia, who acted in such a cowardly manner, and the Federalists, who encouraged them in such conduct.

Q. How were American disasters on land compensated?

A. By victories on the sea.

Q. What great naval victory was obtained by the Americans on the 19th of August, 1812?

A. The American frigate *Constitution*, commanded by Captain Isaac Hull, captured the British frigate *Guerriere*, after a desperate engagement.

Q. What other naval victory did the Americans gain about the same time?

A. Captain Porter, in command of the United States frigate *Essex*, captured the British sloop of war *Alert*.

Q. What victory was gained on the 18th of October?

A. Captain Jones, commanding the *Wasp*, captured the British sloop of war *Frolic*.

Q. What happened on the 25th of October?

A. The frigate *United States* captured the British frigate *Macedonian*.

Q. Who commanded the American vessel in this engagement?

A. Captain Decatur, who had distinguished himself in the war with Tripoli.

Q. What other great success had the Americans on the 29th of October?

A. The frigate *Constitution* captured the British frigate *Java*.

Q. In addition to these victories, what was accomplished by American privateers?

A. They succeeded in distressing the enemy's commerce, capturing about five hundred British merchantmen, and taking three thousand prisoners.



CAPTAIN DECATUR.

CHAPTER VI.

Administration of James Madison (continued).—War with Great Britain (continued).

Q. WHAT was the first important event of the campaign of 1813?

A. The massacre at the river Raisin, which occurred on the 22d of January.

Q. Give an account of it.

A. General Winchester was compelled to surrender a force of several hundred Americans to Colonel Proctor, who commanded a large body of British and Indians. After the surrender the Indians massacred the greater portion of their captives.

Q. What was the second important event of this year?

A. The battle of York, or Toronto, in Upper Canada.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. The Americans were victorious, but their commander, General Pike, was killed.

Q. What occurred in May?

A. General Proctor, with a considerable body of British and Indians, besieged Fort Meigs; but it was successfully defended by General Harrison.

Q. What other fort was attacked by Proctor during the same month?

A. Fort Sandusky.

Q. With what result?

A. It was successfully defended by Major Croghan.

Q. What battle occurred on the 29th of May?

A. The battle of Sackett's Harbor, in which the British General Prevost was defeated.

Q. What British fort was captured on the same day?

A. Fort George.

Q. What great naval battle was won by the Americans on the 10th of September?

A. The battle of Lake Erie.

Q. Who commanded the American fleet on this occasion?

A. Commodore Perry.

Q. What report of his victory did Perry make to General Harrison?

A. "We have met the enemy, and they are ours!—two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop."

Q. What did this victory enable General Harrison to do?

A. It enabled him to cross the lake into Canada.

Q. When and where did he encounter the enemy?

A. On the 5th of October, at the river Thames.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. Harrison gained a complete victory, and Tecumseh, the celebrated Indian ally of the British, was killed.

Q. While these events were going on in the North, what had happened in Georgia and Alabama?

A. The Creek Indians had taken up arms.

Q. What did the Indians do on the 30th of August?

A. They surprised Fort Mimms, on the Chattahoochee River, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children.

Q. Who were called out to oppose them?

A. The militia of Georgia and Tennessee.

Q. Who commanded the Georgia troops?

A. General John Floyd.

Q. Who commanded the Tennessee troops?

A. General Coffee.

Q. Who had command of the whole?

A. Major-General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee.

Q. What two battles did the Georgians under Floyd fight with the Indians?

A. The battles of Callibee and Autossee.

Q. With what result?

A. The Indians were defeated, and their town of Autossee was burned.

Q. What victory was gained by the Tennessee troops under General Coffee on the 3d of November?

A. The battle of Tallushatchee.

Q. What important victory was gained by General Jackson on the 8th of November?

A. The important victory at Talladega.

Q. What battle was fought soon after?

A. The battle of Emucksfair, in which the Americans were again victorious.

Q. Where were the Indians at last completely overthrown?

A. At Tohopeka, or the "Horse-shoe Bend," on the Tallapoosa River.

Q. What happened soon after?

A. A treaty of peace was made with the Indians.

Q. What can you say of operations on the sea during the year 1813?

A. The British and Americans each gained victories on the ocean.

Q. What victories were gained by the British?

A. The British frigate Shannon captured the American frigate Chesapeake, and the British brig Pelican captured the American brig Argus.

Q. How many of the enemy's merchant-ships had been captured by the Argus before her own capture by the Pelican?

A. More than twenty.

Q. What were the principal American victories gained on the sea during the same year?

A. The capture of the British brig Peacock by the American sloop Hornet, and the capture of the British brig Boxer by the American brig Enterprise.

Q. What American vessel was very successful during this year in capturing British merchantmen?

A. The frigate Essex, commanded by Commodore Porter.

Q. What was done during the same summer by British fleets in the Delaware and Chesapeake Bays?

A. They destroyed all the merchant-vessels within their reach, and did great damage to many towns on the coast.

Q. What towns were burned by them?

A. Frenchtown, Georgetown, Havre de Grace, and Fredericktown.

Q. What was the result of an attack made upon Norfolk, Virginia?

A. The British were repulsed with heavy loss.

CHAPTER VII.

Madison's Administration (concluded).—End of the War with Great Britain.

Q. WHAT was the first important event of the year 1814?

A. The advance of the Americans, under General Wilkinson, into Canada.

Q. What was the termination of this advance?

A. Wilkinson was defeated at La Cole Mill, on the 31st of March, with heavy loss.

Q. What important battle was fought on the 5th of July?

A. The battle of Chippewa, in Canada, in which the Americans were victorious.

Q. Who commanded the Americans in this battle?

A. General Brown.

Q. When did the battle of Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane, take place?

A. On the 25th of July.

Q. What was the result?

A. The British were worsted.

Q. What American officer distinguished himself greatly on this occasion?

A. General Scott.

Q. What other victory was gained by the Americans on the 15th of August?

A. The British General Drummond attacked Fort Erie, and was repulsed with great loss.

Q. What was the most important battle and the greatest victory won by the Americans during the year 1814?



GENERAL SCOTT.

A. The battle of Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain.

Q. When was the battle fought?

A. On the 11th of September.

Q. What kind of a battle was this?

A. It was a joint land and naval action.

Q. Who commanded the American army at Plattsburg?

A. General Macomb.

Q. Who was the British commander?

A. General Prevost.

Q. What did the British army number?

A. It numbered fourteen thousand.

Q. Was the American army as large?

A. It was much smaller.

Q. Who commanded the British fleet on the lake?

A. Commodore Downie.

Q. Who commanded the American fleet?

A. Commodore McDonough.

Q. Give some account of the battle.

A. The battle ended in the surrender of the British fleet and the retreat of the British army. The British Commodore Downie was killed in the fight.

Q. What disaster happened to the Americans in August?

A. A British fleet under Admirals Cockburn and Cochrane ascended the Chesapeake, and a land force under General Ross captured Washington City and burned the Government buildings.

Q. What was the result of an attack made soon after on Baltimore?

A. The British were repulsed, General Ross being killed.

Q. What can you say of the operations of the respective navies of the United States and England during the year 1814?

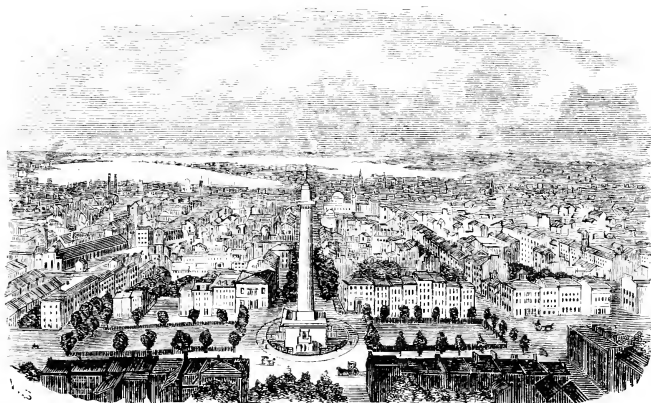
A. The United States lost two war-ships, while England lost five.

Q. During the summer and fall of 1814, what portion of the Union became very much dissatisfied with the management of the war?

A. The New England States.

Q. What was done in December, 1814?

A. A Convention was held at Hartford, Connecticut, consisting of delegates from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Connecticut.



VIEW OF BALTIMORE.

Q. What were the designs of the leaders of this Convention?

A. Their real designs have never been clearly ascertained.

Q. Of what were they accused?

A. They were accused of a design to withdraw their States from the Union.

Q. What removed the grievances of which the New England States complained?

A. The cessation of hostilities.

Q. When and where was a treaty of peace signed?

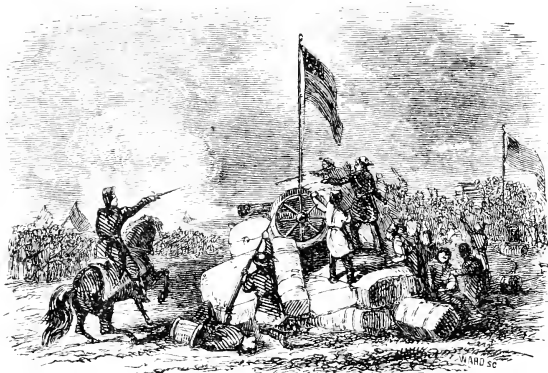
A. On the 24th of December, 1814, at Ghent, in Belgium or Flanders.

Q. What great battle was fought before the news of peace reached America?

A. The battle of New Orleans, on the 8th of January, 1815.

Q. What can you say of this battle?

A. It was the most splendid victory won by the armies of the United States during the war.



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

Q. Give an account of it.

A. A British army of twelve thousand men, led by General Packenham, attacked a force of hardly half as many Americans, commanded by General Andrew Jackson. The Americans were protected by fortifications, and the British were repulsed, with the loss of twenty-five hundred men, killed, wounded, and captured, General Packenham being among the killed. The American loss was only seven killed and six wounded.

Q. What news was received a few days after the battle?

A. That peace had been made fifteen days before the battle.

Q. How was the news of peace received?

A. With great joy throughout the whole country.

Q. Against what power was war next declared?

A. Against Algiers, in the northern part of Africa.

Q. Why was this war declared?

A. Because the Algerines had violated the treaty of 1795.

Q. Who was sent against Algiers?

A. Commodore Decatur, in command of three frigates and seven smaller vessels.

Q. With what success did he meet ?

A. He captured two Algerine ships of war, and compelled the Dey, or ruler, of Algiers to make a peace highly advantageous to the United States.

Q. What other African powers were next visited ?

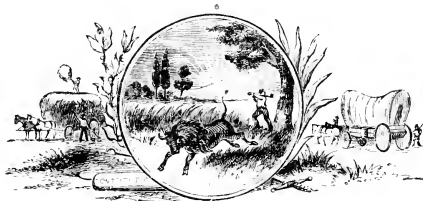
A. Tunis and Tripoli, because they had also been violating the rights of American citizens.

Q. What was his success against these powers ?

A. They also were speedily brought to terms.

Q. What act was passed on the 19th of April, 1816

A. An act for the admission of Indiana into the Union as a State.



SEAL OF INDIANA.

Q. When did another Presidential election take place ?

A. In the fall of 1816.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Republican, or Democratic party ?

A. James Monroe, of Virginia, for President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Federal party ?

A. Rufus King, of New York, for President, and John Howard, of Maryland, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election ?

A. Monroe was elected President, and Tompkins Vice-President.

CHAPTER VIII.

Administration of James Monroe.

Q. WHEN was James Monroe inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1817.

Q. What can you say of his inauguration address?

A. It gave general satisfaction to all parties.

Q. What has Monroe's administration been called?

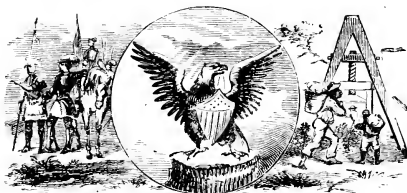
A. It has been called "the era of good feeling."

Q. Why was it so called?

A. Because old party lines were nearly extinct.

Q. When was Mississippi admitted into the Union as a State?

A. On the 10th day of December, 1817.



SEAL OF MISSISSIPPI.

Q. What war broke out in 1818?

A. A war with the Seminole Indians.

Q. Who was sent against them?

A. General Andrew Jackson, at the head of about one thousand men.

Q. Who were suspected by Jackson of giving help to the Indians?

A. The Spanish authorities in Florida.

Q. What did he accordingly do?

A. He invaded Florida, seized St. Mark's and Pensacola, and sent the Spanish governor and his troops to Havana, in Cuba.

Q. What can you say of this conduct of Jackson?

A. It was made a subject of inquiry in both houses of Congress; but upon investigation his course was approved by large majorities in both the Senate and the House of Representatives.

Q. What was done by the Spanish Minister at Washington?

A. He protested against these proceedings.

Q. Why was not the matter pressed?

A. Because negotiations were at that time pending for the cession of Florida to the United States.

Q. When was Illinois admitted into the Union as a separate State?

A. On the 3d of December, 1818.



SEAL OF ILLINOIS.

Q. What memorable event occurred in the year 1819?

A. The passage of the first steamship across the Atlantic.

Q. What was the name of this steamship?

A. It was called the Savannah, and was owned in Savannah, Georgia, though built in the city of New York.

Q. When did the Savannah set sail?

A. In May, 1819, bound from Savannah, Georgia, to Liverpool, England.

Q. What can you say of the voyage?

A. The steamer made a successful voyage to Liverpool, and afterwards to St. Petersburg, in Russia, and was everywhere an object of great curiosity.

Q. What new State was admitted into the Union on the 14th of December, 1819?

A. The State of Alabama.



SEAL OF ALABAMA.

Q. What was the most important measure of Monroe's administration?

A. The "Missouri Compromise of 1820."

Q. Was Missouri admitted under this act, as has been generally supposed?

A. It was not.

Q. What State was admitted under the Missouri Compromise?

A. The State of Maine.



SEAL OF MAINE.

Q. When?

A. On the 15th of March, 1820.

Q. What question began now to agitate the country?

A. The question as to whether the Federal Government had any right to interfere with negro slavery in the Territories.

Q. Had this question agitated the country before?

A. It had not.

Q. What was the effect of its introduction into the halls of Congress?

A. The whole country was agitated, and the friends of the Constitution and the Union became everywhere alarmed.

Q. What caused the agitation of the slavery question in Congress?

A. The application of Missouri, in February, 1819, for admission into the Union as a State.



SEAL OF MISSOURI.

Q. Who opposed its admission?

A. A large number of the members of Congress from the non-slaveholding States.

Q. On what ground did they oppose its admission?

A. Because the constitution of Missouri recognized property in slaves.

Q. Had not other States been admitted whose constitutions recognized property in slaves?

A. They had; but there was a strong party in the North who were in favor of admitting no more States whose constitutions recognized slavery.

Q. How was the dispute settled for the time?

A. By an agreement that slavery should be excluded from all the remainder of the Louisiana Territory north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes.

Q. When was Missouri at last admitted?

A. On the 10th day of August, 1821, after much opposition.

Q. In the mean while, what had occurred?

A. Another Presidential election.

Q. What was the result?

A. Mr. Monroe was unanimously re-elected, and Mr. Tompkins was re-elected Vice-President.

Q. What proclamation was issued by the President on the 22d of February, 1821?

A. A proclamation announcing the cession to the United States by Spain of East and West Florida, and of all claims of Spain to territory on the Pacific coast north of forty-two degrees of north latitude.

Q. What did this cession include?

A. All the Spanish claims to any portion of Oregon.

Q. What did the United States pay for this cession?

A. Five millions of dollars.

Q. By what was the year 1824 signalized?

A. By the visit of La Fayette to the United States.

Q. What can you say of this visit?

A. He traveled through all the States, and was everywhere received with every demonstration of esteem and affection.

Q. How did Congress express the gratitude of the country to La Fayette for his great services during the war for independence?

A. By voting him two hundred thousand dollars and twenty-three thousand acres of land in Florida.

Q. How old was La Fayette at the time of his visit to the United States?

A. He was nearly seventy years old.

Q. When did another Presidential election take place?

A. In the fall of 1824.

Q. How many persons were voted for for President?

A. Four.

Q. Who were they?

A. William H. Crawford, of Georgia, Henry Clay, of Kentucky, Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, and John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts.

Q. As none of the candidates received a majority of all the votes cast in the Electoral Colleges, upon whom did the election devolve?

A. Upon the House of Representatives.

Q. What was the result of the election in the House?

A. John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, was elected President.

Q. Who was elected Vice-President?

A. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, who had received a majority of all the votes cast in the Electoral Colleges.

Q. Was he elected by the House of Representatives?

A. He was not; for, having been elected by the people, there was no need for the House to vote for Vice-President.

CHAPTER IX.

Administration of John Quincy Adams.

Q. WHEN was John Quincy Adams, the sixth President of the United States, inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1825.

Q. Whose son was he?

A. He was the son of John Adams, the second President.

Q. What question produced considerable agitation in the country soon after Mr. Adams's accession to office?

A. A controversy between the Federal Government and the State of Georgia.

Q. What was the cause of this controversy?

A. A treaty that was made with the Creek Indians.

Q. Give an account of this treaty.

A. On the 12th of February, 1825, Duncan G. Campbell and James Meriwether, United States Commissioners, made a treaty with the principal Creek chiefs, by which the Indian title to a large extent of territory within the limits of Georgia was extinguished.

Q. When had this treaty been ratified by the Senate of the United States?

A. Just before the close of Mr. Monroe's administration.

Q. Was not this treaty in accordance with the agreement between the Federal Government and Georgia in 1802, when Georgia ceded to the Federal Government the Territories of Alabama and Mississippi?

A. It was.

Q. Who opposed the treaty?

A. A few factious chiefs of the tribe, instigated by certain white men.

Q. What crime was committed by them?

A. They assassinated Mackintosh, the principal chief, who had signed the treaty.

Q. What did they then do?

A. They called upon the Federal Government to repudiate the treaty.

Q. Did the Federal Government comply with their request?

A. It did; and made a new treaty with the Indians on the 24th of January, 1826.

Q. What happened in the mean time?

A. George M. Troup, Governor of Georgia, proceeded to take possession of the territory ceded by the first treaty.

Q. What did the Federal authorities do?

A. They threatened to arrest the commissioners of Governor Troup, who were surveying the territory granted under the first, or old treaty.

Q. What did Governor Troup do?

A. He declared that if the Georgians could get their rights in no other way they would oppose force to force.

Q. What did the Federal Government then do?

A. It made no effort to interfere with Governor Troup, and the lands were surveyed and occupied under the old treaty.

Q. Who were right in this controversy?

A. The authorities of Georgia.

Q. For what was the 4th of July, 1826, memorable?

A. For the fact of its being the fiftieth anniversary of the independence of the United States.

Q. What two illustrious men died on this day?

A. John Adams, of Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia.

Q. What measure of Congress enacted during Mr. Adams's administration was violently opposed in the South?

A. The protective tariff of 1828.

Q. What was the protective tariff?

A. It was an act laying a tax on foreign goods imported into the United States, so that American manufactures might be able to compete with the manufactures of Europe.

Q. Why did the Southern statesmen oppose the protective tariff?

A. Because they considered it unconstitutional, as well as unjust and damaging to the agricultural interests of the South.

Q. What occurred during the excitement caused by the passage of the tariff act?

A. The Presidential election of 1828.

Q. Whom did the friends of the administration nominate?

A. They nominated Mr. Adams for President, and Richard Rush for Vice-President.

Q. Who were nominated by the opponents of the administration?

A. Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, for President, and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, for Vice-President.

Q. What can you say of Mr. Adams?

A. He was a man of great intellect and unblemished character, but was not popular as President.

Q. How had he offended the South?

A. By favoring a high tariff.

Q. In what way had he offended the New England States?

A. By asserting that in 1803 and 1804 the New England States had favored a dissolution of the Union, and by further de-

claring that the Hartford Convention of 1814 had entertained the same design.

Q. What was the result of the Presidential election?

A. Andrew Jackson was elected President, and John C. Calhoun Vice-President.

CHAPTER X.

Administration of Andrew Jackson.

Q. WHEN was Andrew Jackson inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1829.

Q. What was the first important measure of the new administration?

A. The removal of the Indian tribes that lived east of the Mississippi to a portion of country lying west of that river.

Q. Why were these tribes removed west of the Mississippi?

A. So that they might no longer be a source of trouble to the whites, who had now occupied the greater part of the territory east of the Mississippi.

Q. When was an act passed carrying into effect this policy of removal?

A. On the 31st of May, 1830.

Q. What distinguished man died on the 4th of July, 1831?

A. Ex-President James Monroe.

Q. What act of Jackson's rendered him unpopular with some who had previously been his friends?

A. His vetoing the bill for the re-charter of the Bank of the United States.

Q. What war broke out in the year 1832?

A. A war with the Winnebagoes and several other Northwestern tribes of Indians.

Q. Who commanded the United States forces that were sent against them?

A. General Scott.

Q. Did the war last long?

A. It did not; for it was soon terminated by the capture of Black Hawk, the chief, and several other chiefs of less note.

Q. When did another Presidential election occur?

A. In the fall of 1832.

Q. Into what had the original Democratic, or Republican party been divided?

A. Into two parties: one of which was styled Democratic, and the other National Republican.

Q. What was the chief point of difference between these parties?

A. The National Republican favored the policy of internal improvements by the Government, and the re-chartering of the United States Bank, both of which the Democratic party opposed.

Q. Who were the candidates of the National Republicans?

A. Henry Clay, of Kentucky, for President, and John Sergeant, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party?

A. Andrew Jackson for President, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Jackson and Van Buren were elected by large majorities.

Q. What had happened in the mean while?

A. A sovereign Convention of the people of South Carolina had assembled and adopted what was known as the "Nullification Ordinance."

Q. What were the leading features of this ordinance?

A. 1st. A declaration that the Tariff Act of 1832 was unconstitutional, and therefore null and void. 2d. A provision for testing its constitutionality before the courts of the State. 3d. A declaration that, if the measures thus adopted were resisted by the Federal authorities, the State of South Carolina would withdraw from the Union.

Q. When was this measure to take effect?

A. On the 12th of February, 1833, if the protective policy should not be abandoned by Congress before that time.

Q. At the session of Congress in December, 1832, what did the President recommend?

A. He recommended a reduction of the tariff.

Q. By what was this followed a few days after?

A. By a proclamation against Nullification.

Q. In this proclamation, what did he urge the people of South Carolina?

A. He urged them not to persist in the enforcement of their ordinance, as it would bring on a conflict between the Federal Government and the State of South Carolina.

Q. How did many regard this proclamation?

A. As amounting to a denial of the right of any State to secede from the Union for any cause whatever.

Q. What did the President afterwards maintain?

A. That an erroneous construction had been placed upon the proclamation.

Q. To what did he declare his adherence?

A. To the views of Mr. Jefferson as set forth in the Virginia and Kentucky resolutions of 1798 and 1799.

Q. Soon after this proclamation was issued, what was done by Mr. Verplanck, an administration member of Congress from New York?

A. He introduced a bill for the further reduction of the tariff.

Q. What was done by the Legislature of Virginia?

A. Benjamin Watkins Leigh was sent as a Peace Commissioner to South Carolina.

Q. For what purpose was he sent?

A. To urge the authorities of South Carolina to suspend the execution of the Ordinance of Nullification at least until the 4th of March.

Q. Did South Carolina accede to this request?

A. She did.

Q. By whom was a compromise introduced into Congress which was satisfactory to all parties?

A. By Henry Clay, of Kentucky.

Q. When did the compromise receive the approval of the President and become a law?

A. On the 2d of March, 1833.

Q. What was then done in South Carolina?

A. The Convention of South Carolina re-assembled, and repealed the Ordinance of Nullification.

Q. What did President Jackson do in the spring of 1833?

A. He made a tour through New York and the New England States.

Q. How was he everywhere received?

A. He was received with every demonstration of esteem and honor.

Q. What did the President do soon after his return to Washington?

A. He ordered all the deposits of public money to be removed from the banks of the United States and to be placed in certain State banks.

Q. What was done by William J. Duane, the Secretary of the Treasury?

A. He refused to obey the order of the President.

Q. Who was then appointed Secretary in his place?

A. Roger B. Taney.

Q. What can you say of this action of the President?

A. It produced great excitement throughout the country.

Q. What three distinguished Senators opposed the President?

A. Calhoun, of South Carolina, Clay, of Kentucky, and Webster, of Massachusetts.

Q. What two distinguished Senators sided with the President?

A. Benton, of Missouri, and Forsyth, of Georgia.

Q. What name was now assumed by all the opponents of the President's policy?

A. They assumed the party name of Whig.

Q. What resolution was passed by the Senate?

A. A resolution censuring the President and declaring his conduct unconstitutional.

Q. How did the President reply to this resolution of censure?

A. By a paper known as the "Protest."

Q. What was the final result of the contest between President Jackson and the Senate?

A. It resulted in the complete triumph of the President.

Q. What finally became of the resolution of censure?

A. It was expunged from the journal of the Senate, that body having ordered that black lines should be drawn around it.

Q. What occurred on the night of the 16th of December, 1835?

A. A great fire in the city of New York.

Q. How much property was destroyed?

A. Over seventeen million dollars' worth of property.

Q. What war broke out on the 28th of the same month?

A. A war with the remaining Seminole Indians in Florida, who refused to go West.

Q. How did the war commence?

A. By the murder of Hon. Wiley Thompson, United States Agent to the tribe, and by the massacre of Major Dade and his command of one hundred men.

Q. What happened next day?

A. An indecisive battle was fought between the Americans under General Clinch and the Indians under Osceola.

Q. What did the Indians then do?

A. They ravaged all the country south of St. Augustine.

Q. When did General Scott assume the command?

A. On the 7th of February, 1836.

Q. What happened on the 29th of February?

A. General Gaines, while hastening to the relief of General Clinch, who was besieged in Fort Drane, was attacked by the Indians, but repulsed them.

Q. What was General Scott soon obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to proceed against the Creeks in Georgia and Alabama, who had commenced hostilities by terrible massacres on the Chattahoochee.

Q. When were the Creeks brought to terms?

A. During the summer of 1836.

Q. What was then done with them?

A. They were removed west of the Mississippi River.

Q. How long did the war against the Seminoles last?

A. It lasted until 1842, during the administration of President Tyler.

Q. Mention some of the important events which tended to bring the Indians to terms.

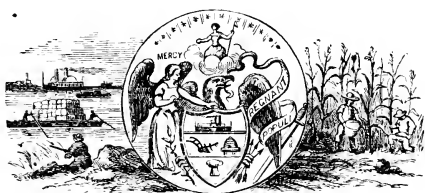
A. One thing which tended to subdue the Seminoles was the capture of their chief, Osceola, by General Jessup, who held the chief a prisoner in Fort Moultrie, Charleston, South Carolina, where he died; another was the great victory gained over them by Colonel Taylor.

Q. Where did Taylor gain the victory?

A. At the head of Lake Okeechobee.

Q. What was finally done with the Seminoles?

A. They were removed beyond the Mississippi.



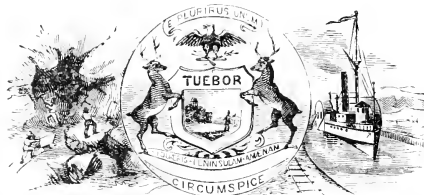
SEAL OF ARKANSAS.

Q. What two States were admitted into the Union on the 15th of June, 1836?

A. The States of Arkansas and Michigan.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party during the Presidential election of 1836?

A. The candidates of the Democratic party were Martin Van Buren, of New York, for President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.



SEAL OF MICHIGAN.

Q. What can you say of the vote of the Whig, or opposition party?

A. It was divided between several candidates.

Q. Who were elected?

A. Martin Van Buren was elected President, and Richard M. Johnson Vice-President.

CHAPTER XI.

Administration of Martin Van Buren.

Q. WHEN was Martin Van Buren inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1837.

Q. What occurred soon after he became President?

A. A great commercial crisis.

Q. What was the cause of this?

A. It was occasioned by reckless speculation, and by the expansion of the paper currency beyond all the legitimate wants of the country.

Q. What measure did the President adopt so as to give relief to the merchants and bankers?

A. He suspended suits on bonds which had been given for the collection of duties.

Q. What happened soon after?

A. All the banks in New York City suspended specie payments.

Q. By what was this suspension soon followed?

A. By a like suspension of nearly all the banks in all the States.

Q. What did Mr. Van Buren do in order to provide for meeting demands on the Treasury?

A. He called an extra session of Congress.

Q. What act was passed by Congress to meet the exigencies of the Treasury and to provide for the relief of the people?

A. An act was passed authorizing the issue of Treasury notes to the amount of ten millions of dollars.

Q. How was the policy of the administration, at this time adopted for the collection and transmission of the public funds, known?

A. It was known as the "Sub-Treasury System."

Q. How was it all done?

A. It was all done by and through the officers of the Government, without the agency of any banking institution.

Q. Who led the opposition to the financial policy of the administration?

A. Clay, of Kentucky, and Webster, of Massachusetts.

Q. Who defended it?

A. Calhoun, of South Carolina, Benton, of Missouri, and Silas Wright, of New York.

Q. What other subject greatly agitated the country at this time?

A. The subject of the abolition of negro slavery in the District of Columbia.

Q. Who led the agitation of the slavery question in the District?

A. Ex-President John Quincy Adams, a member of the House of Representatives.

Q. What did Mr. Calhoun do on the 28th of December, 1837?

A. He introduced into the Senate a series of resolutions upon the nature and character of the Federal Government.

Q. What was the general purport of these resolutions?

A. That the Federal Government was created by the States with a view to their increased security against all dangers, domestic as well as foreign; that the citizens of one State had no right to interfere with the domestic institutions of another State; and that the Federal Government had no right to interfere with slavery either in the States or Territories of the Union.

Q. What was the fate of these resolutions?

A. They were adopted by the Senate by a very large majority.

Q. What liberal donation was made to the United States in September, 1838?

A. A donation amounting to nearly six hundred thousand dollars.

Q. By whom was this donation made?

A. By James Smithson, an Englishman.

Q. To what purpose were these funds appropriated?

A. To the endowment of the Institute in Washington City known as the Smithsonian Institute.

Q. When was the agitation of the slavery question renewed by the Abolitionists?

A. It was renewed in the House of Representatives in December, 1838.

Q. Who introduced a series of resolutions on this subject?

A. Mr. Atherton, of New Hampshire.

Q. What was the purport of these resolutions?

A. That under the Constitution of the United States Congress had no authority to interfere with slavery in the several States of the Confederacy; that Congress had no right to do indirectly what it could not do directly, and therefore should not interfere with slavery either in the District of Columbia or in the Territories.

Q. What was done with these resolutions?

A. They were adopted by an overwhelming majority.

Q. What did most of the public men of the country now think?

A. They thought that this exciting agitation would now be abandoned.

Q. Was the agitation abandoned?

A. It was not.

Q. What can you say of the Abolition party?

A. They cared nothing for Constitutional restraints.

Q. What did the chief of their leaders proclaim the Constitution to be?

A. "A covenant with death and an agreement with hell."

Q. When did another Presidential election take place?

A. In the fall of 1840.

Q. What were the principal issues in this contest?

A. The Sub-Treasury System, extravagant appropriations, and all the leading measures of the administration.

Q. Were either of the great parties of the country at this time connected with the Anti-slavery or Abolition agitators?

A. They were not.

Q. How did the mass of the American people at this time regard the Abolition agitators?

A. They regarded them as men who were disloyal to the Constitution, and as the foes of the Federal Union.

Q. Who were the nominees of the Whig party in 1840?

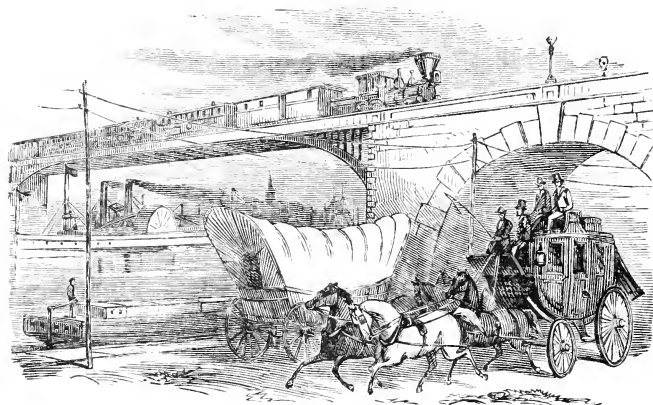
A. William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, was their candidate for President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party?

A. Martin Van Buren was their candidate for President; but they could not agree upon a candidate for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. William Henry Harrison was elected President, and John Tyler Vice-President.



PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS.

CHAPTER XII.

Administration of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler.

Q. WHEN was William Henry Harrison inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1841.

Q. How long was he President?

A. Only one month, he died on the 4th of April, exactly one month from the day of his inauguration.

Q. How did the news of his death affect the country?

A. The whole country was filled with sorrow at the news of his death.

Q. Who now became President?

A. John Tyler, the Vice-President.

Q. What occurred soon after the accession of Tyler?

A. A serious split in the Whig party.

Q. What was the cause of this?

A. A bill was passed by the Whig Congress establishing the Fiscal Bank of the United States, which President Tyler vetoed.

Q. What bill was passed soon after?

A. Another bill of like character, under the title of the "Fiscal Corporation of the United States."

Q. What became of this bill?

A. It was also vetoed by the President.

Q. What was the result of the quarrel between Tyler and the majority of his party in Congress?

A. It resulted in the division of the Whig party, and all the members of the Cabinet resigned, except Mr. Webster, who was Secretary of State.

Q. What can you say of those who were appointed to the Cabinet in place of those who had resigned?

A. They were Whigs of the strict-construction school, who sided with the President.

Q. On what other question did the President differ with the majority of his party?

A. On the tariff question. He vetoed two tariff bills, but approved a third, which was more in accordance with his own views.

Q. What important treaty was made with Great Britain in 1842?

A. A treaty which settled definitely the northeastern boundary between the United States and the neighboring British Possessions.

Q. Who negotiated this treaty on the part of the United States?

A. Daniel Webster, the Secretary of State.

Q. Who on the part of Great Britain?

A. Lord Ashburton.

Q. What occurred in the State of Rhode Island during this year?

A. An insurrection broke out, known since as Dorr's Rebellion.

Q. What can you say of this insurrection?

A. It was subdued with the loss of but one man.

Q. What became of Dorr?

A. He was convicted of treason and sentenced to be imprisoned for life, but was pardoned in less than one year.

Q. What was the cause of this insurrection?

A. The dissatisfaction of some of the people of Rhode Island with the State Constitution.

Q. How was the dissatisfaction appeased?

A. By the adoption of a new Constitution in 1843.

Q. With what was the close of Mr. Tyler's term occupied?

A. With negotiations for the annexation of Texas.

Q. By whom had Texas been claimed in 1818?

A. It had been claimed by the United States as a part of Louisiana.

Q. When did the United States renounce their claim to Texas?

A. At the time of the cession of Florida by Spain.

Q. Who obtained permission of Spain to establish a colony of emigrants from the United States in the limits of what is now known as the State of Texas?

A. Moses Austin, a native of Connecticut.

Q. When did he obtain this grant?

A. In 1820.

Q. At his death who succeeded to his rights under this grant?

A. His son, Stephen F. Austin.

Q. Of what city was he the founder?

A. He was the founder of the city of Austin.

Q. What did Austin soon after do?

A. He returned to the United States for more emigrants.

Q. While he was absent, what happened?

A. Mexico and other Spanish provinces became independent of Spain.

Q. What was Austin now obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to visit the city of Mexico and obtain a confirmation of the grant made to his father.

Q. Did he succeed in this?

A. He did.

Q. What did the Congress of Mexico decree in 1824?

A. That Texas should, when it had a sufficient population, become a State of the Mexican republic.

Q. What now happened?

A. Emigrants from the United States, as well as from other countries, went to Texas in large numbers.

Q. What happened in 1832, soon after the accession of Santa Anna to the Presidency of the Mexican republic?

A. The people of Texas demanded admission as a separate State into the Mexican Union, and sent Austin as their agent to the Mexican Congress.

Q. In the mean time, what had Santa Anna done?

A. He had overthrown the Mexican Constitution and made himself dictator.

Q. What did the people of Texas then do?

A. They insisted on their rights under the Mexican Constitution, and raised forces to resist the usurpations of Santa Anna.

Q. What then happened?

A. The Mexican General Cos marched against the Texans; but was defeated by them at Gonzales, and shortly after at Goliad, in the month of October, 1835.

Q. Who was general of the Texan forces at this time?

A. Austin.

Q. What happened in the latter part of 1835?

A. Austin resigned his position, and General Sam Houston was appointed commander of the Texan forces.

Q. What victory was gained by the Texans in December, 1835?

A. They captured General Cos and his army, numbering over one thousand men, in the town of Bexar, after six days' siege.

Q. What did Santa Anna then do?

A. He marched against the Texans at the head of more than seven thousand men.

Q. What fort did he capture?

A. He captured Fort Alamo, defended by one hundred and forty Texans, after a bombardment which lasted eleven days, but with a Mexican loss of sixteen hundred men.

Q. What was done with the garrison after the surrender?

A. They were put to the sword.

Q. Where was a battle fought towards the last of March?

A. At Goliad, where Colonel Fannin, a Georgian, finding himself about to be overpowered, determined to surrender if he could obtain honorable terms.

Q. What agreement did Santa Anna make with him?

A. That he and his men should give up their arms and then be permitted to return to the United States.

Q. Of what act of treachery was Santa Anna guilty?

A. As soon as the surrender was complete, he caused the whole force, consisting of more than three hundred men, to be massacred.

Q. Where was Santa Anna finally overthrown?

A. At San Jacinto, on the 21st of April, 1836. His army was completely defeated, more than half of the Mexicans being killed, wounded, and captured, and Santa Anna himself being taken prisoner.

Q. What treaty was now entered into?

A. A treaty between Santa Anna and General Houston, by which the Mexican forces were withdrawn from the soil of Texas.

Q. By what nations was the independence of Texas now acknowledged?

A. By France, Great Britain, and the United States.

Q. What did the people of Texas do in 1837?

A. They sought to be admitted as a State into the American Union.

Q. Were they received at this time?

1. They were not.

Q. When did Mr. Tyler negotiate a treaty for its annexation?

A. On the 12th of April, 1844.

Q. What became of this treaty?

A. It was rejected by the Senate.

Q. When did another Presidential election come off?

A. In the fall of 1844.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Whigs?

A. Henry Clay, of Kentucky, for President, and Theodore Frelinghuysen, formerly of New Jersey, but then of New York, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party?

A. James K. Polk, of Tennessee, for President, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President.



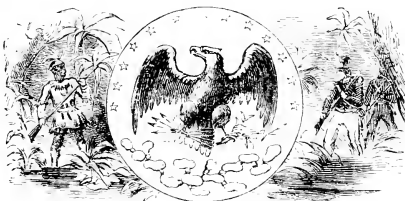
SEAL OF IOWA.

Q. What was the most prominent feature of this contest?

A. The annexation of Texas, which the Democrats favored and the Whigs opposed.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. James K. Polk was elected President, and George M. Dallas Vice-President.



SEAL OF FLORIDA.

Q. When was a joint resolution providing for the annexation of Texas adopted by Congress and approved by President Tyler?

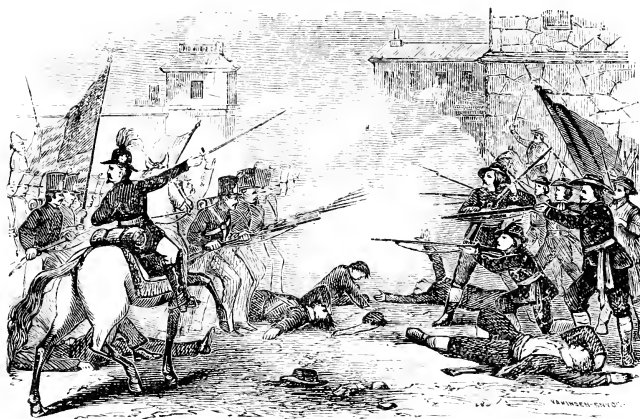
A. On the 1st of March, 1845, a few days before the expiration of President Tyler's term.

Q. What two new States were admitted into the Union on the 3d of March, 1845?

A. The States of Iowa and Florida.

CHAPTER XIII.

Administration of James K. Polk.—War with Mexico.



STORMING OF MONTEREY, MEXICO.

Q. WHEN was James K. Polk inaugurated as President of the United States?

A. On the 4th of March, 1845.

Q. What did the President say in his inaugural about the late action of Congress in relation to Texas?

A. He expressed his approval of the action of Congress on the Texas question.

Q. What did he say of the title of the United States to the whole of Oregon?

A. He asserted that it was clear and indisputable, and expressed a determination to maintain such title by force, if necessary.

Q. What was done by General Almonte, the Mexican Minister at Washington, soon after Mr. Polk's accession to office?

A. He demanded his passports and left the country.

Q. Why did he do this?

A. Because Mexico had never recognized the independence of Texas.

Q. Had Mexico any just claim to Texas?

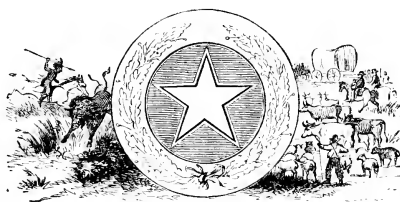
A. Mexico had no just claim to Texas.

Q. Why not?

A. Because ever since the battle of San Jacinto, which was fought in April, 1836, no Mexican army had been in Texas, and the Texans had for nearly nine years maintained an independent government, free from interference on the part of Mexico.

Q. When did Texas agree to the terms of annexation and enter the American Union?

A. On the 4th of July, 1845.



SEAL OF TEXAS.

Q. How many Presidents had Texas during her career as an independent republic?

A. During her career as an independent nation there were four Presidents of Texas.

Q. What were their names?

A. David G. Burnett, General Sam Houston, General Mirabeau B. Lamar, and Anson Jones.

Q. What was the population of Texas at the time of its admission into the American Union?

A. Texas had at that time about two hundred thousand inhabitants.

Q. What is the size of Texas?

A. It contains about two hundred and thirty-seven thousand square miles.

Q. What did President Polk do as soon as Texas was admitted into the Union?

A. He sent General Zachary Taylor with an army of about five thousand men to defend the frontiers of Texas.

Q. What did General Taylor do early in August?

A. He took position at Corpus Christi, near the mouth of the Nueces River.

Q. What distinguished man died while these events were occurring?

A. Ex-President Andrew Jackson.

Q. When did he die?

A. On the 8th of June, 1845.

Q. What was among the first acts of the Congress which assembled in December, 1845?

A. The recognition of Texas as a State of the Federal Union.

Q. What were the leading measures of Congress during this session?

A. The repeal of the Whig Tariff of 1842, and the enactment of another based upon the principles of free trade; the re-enactment of the Sub-Treasury System; the establishment of the Smithsonian Institute out of the funds bequeathed for that purpose in 1837; and a resolution for terminating the joint occupation of Oregon under the treaty at that time existing with Great Britain.

Q. What bills were vetoed by the President?

A. Internal Improvement bills, and a bill to pay United States citizens for French depredations on their commerce.

Q. While Congress was still in session, what were occurring on the frontiers of Texas

A. Military events of great importance.

Q. What was the first movement of the military?

A. General Taylor advanced to the Rio Grande.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 13th of January, 1846.

Q. When did he reach the east bank of the Rio Grande?

A. On the 28th of March.

Q. What did he immediately do?

A. He erected a fortress, called Fort Brown, opposite the Mexican city of Matamoras.

Q. What did General Ampudia, the Mexican commander, do on the 26th of April?

A. He gave notice to General Taylor that he considered hostilities commenced.

Q. What happened on the same day?

A. Sixty-three men, under the command of Captain Thornton, were attacked on the American side of the Rio Grande, and all were either killed or captured.

Q. What did General Taylor do when he ascertained that the Mexicans were moving against Point Isabel for the purpose of cutting off his supplies?

A. He left a small garrison at Fort Brown and marched with his main army to the relief of Point Isabel.

Q. After leaving a garrison at Point Isabel, what did Taylor do?

A. He set out on his return to Fort Brown.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 7th of May, 1846.

Q. What occurred on the next day about noon?

A. He encountered the Mexican army, numbering about six thousand men, at a place called Palo Alto, and defeated them.

Q. What occurred on the next day?

A. The Mexican army, being reinforced, and now numbering about eight thousand men, again opposed Taylor's march, at Resaca de la Palma, but were again defeated, with terrible loss.

Q. What did the American army number in these two battles?

A. It numbered only about twenty-three hundred men.

Q. Who commanded the Mexicans in these battles?

A. General Arista.

Q. What were the comparative losses of the two armies?

A. The Mexicans lost in the two engagements more than twelve hundred men, while the American loss did not exceed two hundred killed and wounded.

Q. While these battles were being fought, what occurred at Fort Brown?

A. The Mexicans assailed the fort, but were repulsed; though the American commander, Major Brown, was killed.

Q. What effect had the news of these victories in the United States?

A. The news of these victories produced great excitement and enthusiasm throughout the United States.

Q. What was done by the President on the 11th of May, 1846?

A. President Polk sent in a message to Congress declaring that Mexico "had invaded our territory and shed the blood of our fellow-citizens on our own soil."

Q. What did Congress then declare?

A. That war existed "by the act of Mexico."

Q. What did Congress authorize the President to do?

A. To accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers.

Q. How was the President's call for volunteers answered?

A. More than three hundred thousand men offered their services.

Q. How was General Taylor's force considerably increased?

A. By large numbers of volunteers.

Q. What did General Taylor do a few days after his victories at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma?

A. He crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of Matamoras.

Q. When did he begin his march into the interior?

A. In the latter part of August.

Q. Before what place did he appear on the 19th of September?

A. Before Monterey, the capital of New Leon.

Q. How was the city garrisoned?

A. By ten thousand Mexicans, commanded by General Ampudia.

Q. What was General Taylor's force?

A. About six thousand five hundred men.

Q. When did Taylor begin the attack?

A. On the 21st of September.

Q. What happened on the 24th?

A. Monterey was surrendered to the Americans, and a truce was agreed upon between the two generals.

Q. When was Taylor ordered by President Polk to resume hostilities?

A. On the 13th of October.

Q. What had been accomplished in the mean time by General Kearney with another American force?

A. General Kearney had in the mean time conquered the whole of New Mexico.

Q. What did he do on the 25th of November?

A. He set out for California at the head of four hundred dragoons.

Q. What did he learn on the way?

A. That California had already been taken possession of by United States forces.

Q. When had this taken place?

A. During the preceding summer.

Q. How had California been conquered?

A. By a land-force commanded by Colonel Fremont, assisted by a naval force under the command of Commodore Sloat and Commodore Stockton.

Q. What was accomplished by Colonel Doniphan, another American officer?

A. With only nine hundred men, he marched a thousand miles through the enemy's country, gaining on the way two victories over superior forces, and finally captured Chihuahua, a city of forty thousand inhabitants.

Q. What great battle was fought on the 22d and 23d of February, 1847?

A. The battle of Buena Vista.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Taylor, at the head of about five thousand men, defeated a Mexican army of twenty thousand men commanded by Santa Anna, their commander-in-chief.

Q. What more can you say of the battle of Buena Vista?

A. This battle so weakened the Mexicans that they made no further efforts to molest General Taylor, and were compelled to abandon the northern provinces of Mexico to the Americans.

Q. To what did the Americans now turn their whole attention?

A. To the capture of Vera Cruz and the city of Mexico.

Q. To whom was this enterprise intrusted?

A. To Major-General Winfield Scott.

Q. What was done on the 9th of March, 1847?

A. General Scott landed twelve thousand men without opposition a short distance south of Vera Cruz.

Q. What now took place?

A. The Americans besieged the city until the 27th, when it was surrendered.

Q. What castle was surrendered at the same time with the city?

A. The castle of San Juan de Ulloa.

Q. What battle was fought on the 18th of April?

A. The battle of Cerro Gordo.

Q. What was the strength of the two armies?

A. The American army numbered nine thousand men, while that of the Mexicans, led by Santa Anna, numbered fifteen thousand and occupied a position strongly fortified.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. After a bloody fight the Americans captured the heights of Cerro Gordo and drove the Mexicans completely from the field, capturing three thousand prisoners, forty-three cannon, and five thousand stand of arms.

Q. Of what city did the Americans take possession on the 15th of May?

A. On the 15th of May the American advance, under General Worth, occupied the city of Puebla.

Q. How long did General Scott remain at Puebla?

A. He remained there until the 7th of August, waiting for reinforcements.

Q. With how large a force did he set out for the city of Mexico?

A. With an army of eleven thousand men.

Q. What battles occurred on the 20th of August?

A. The battles of Contreras and Churubusco.

Q. What was the result of these battles?

A. The Americans completely defeated an army of thirty thousand Mexicans occupying an intrenched position.

Q. What was done the day following these battles?

A. Proposals for peace were made, and an armistice was granted.

Q. What was the result of the negotiations for peace?

A. The negotiations failed, and hostilities were resumed.

Q. What battle was fought on the 8th of September?

A. The battle of Molino del Rey.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Worth, with less than four thousand Americans, after a desperate battle captured the Mexican fortifications, though defended by an army of fourteen thousand men.

Q. What happened soon after this battle?

A. The Americans captured the castle of Chapultepec and the city of Mexico.

Q. When did the American army enter the city of Mexico?

A. On the morning of the 14th of September.

Q. By what were these important victories of the Americans soon followed?

A. By a treaty of peace.

Q. When was this treaty ratified by the United States Senate?

A. On the 10th of March, 1848.

Q. When was it ratified by the Mexican Congress?

A. On the 30th of May of the same year.

Q. When was peace proclaimed?

A. On the 4th of July, 1848.

Q. What did the United States acquire by this treaty?

A. By this treaty the United States acquired the extensive Territories of Texas, New Mexico, and Upper California.

Q. What did the United States pay Mexico for these vast Territories?

A. Fifteen millions of dollars.

Q. By what was the Union now agitated?

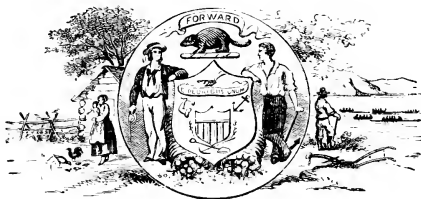
A. By angry disputes respecting the territory lately acquired from Mexico.

Q. What was the occasion of these disputes?

A. Some of the Northern members of Congress desired to exclude slavery from this territory, while the Southern members claimed that this was a question over which Congress had no control.

Q. What State was admitted into the Union on the 29th of May, 1848?

A. The State of Wisconsin.



SEAL OF WISCONSIN.

Q. What was discovered soon after the acquisition of California by the United States?

A. It was discovered that California contained the richest gold-mines in the world.

Q. What was the result of this discovery?

A. People from all parts of the world flocked to California in great numbers, and the population of the Territory soon numbered more than one hundred thousand.

Q. What occurred in the fall of 1848?

A. Another Presidential election.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party?

A. General Lewis Cass, of Michigan, for President, and General William O. Butler, of Kentucky, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Whig party?

A. General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, for President, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for Vice-President.

Q. What other party nominated candidates?

A. The Free-Soil party, which was composed of all those who were opposed to allowing slaves to be carried into the Territories of the Union.

Q. Who were the candidates of this party?

A. Martin Van Buren, of New York, for President, and Charles Francis Adams, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Taylor and Fillmore, the candidates of the Whig party, were elected.

CHAPTER XIV.

Administrations of Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore.

Q. WHEN was General Taylor inaugurated as President of the United States?

A. On Monday, the 5th of March, 1849.

Q. What can you say of his inaugural address?

A. It was conciliatory, and gave satisfaction to the true friends of the Union and the Constitution.

Q. What can you say of the Congress which assembled on the 5th of December, 1849?

A. Its session was much longer than any that had been held up to that time.

Q. When did the session of this Congress commence and end?

A. The session commenced on the 5th of December, 1849, and ended on the 30th of September, 1850.

Q. By what was this session of Congress characterized?

A. By many angry discussions, which greatly alarmed the friends of the Union.

Q. What were the subjects of public excitement?

A. The admission of California as a State, the formation of Territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico, the settlement of the boundary between New Mexico and Texas, slavery in the District of Columbia, and the non-rendition of fugitives from service.

Q. What gave special prominence to the slavery question?

A. The admission of California as a State, and the formation of Territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico.

Q. Upon what principle were all the Southern members of Congress willing to settle the dispute about slavery?

A. On the principle of a division of the public domain between the North and the South.

Q. Did the Northern members of Congress consent to accept the offer of the Southern members thus to settle the slavery question?

A. They did not.

Q. Upon what did the Southern members then insist?

A. Upon the establishment of the principle of non-interference by Congress with slavery, either in the Territories or on the admission of States into the Union.

Q. What else did the Southerners desire?

A. They desired the passage of a law providing some efficient mode for the reclamation and rendition of fugitive slaves from one State to another; but this was bitterly opposed by many Northern members.

Q. What great Southern statesman died while these exciting debates were at their height?

A. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, on the 31st of March, 1850.

Q. What event occurred on the 9th of July, 1850, which filled the whole country with sorrow?

A. President Taylor died, after a few days of illness.

Q. Who now became President?

A. Mr. Fillmore, the Vice-President, now became President.

Q. What can you say of Mr. Fillmore?

A. He gave his cordial sympathy to the efforts of Clay and Webster to bring about a satisfactory adjustment of the questions in dispute between the North and the South.

Q. When and how were these exciting questions settled?

A. They were settled in the latter part of the summer of 1850, by what were known as "the Compromise Measures of 1850."

Q. What principle was established by these measures?

A. The principle of the non-interference of Congress with slavery in the Territories or in the States.

Q. What State was admitted into the Union under this adjustment?

A. The State of California.



SEAL OF CALIFORNIA.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 9th of September, 1850.

Q. What can you say of the peaceful adjustment of all the exciting questions which had disturbed the country?

A. It gave great satisfaction to a large majority of the people of the United States.

Q. What can you say of Mr. Clay, the originator of the "Compromise Measures"?

A. He now had the confidence and love of men of all parties.

Q. Did he ever after take an active part in public affairs?

A. He did not, but from this time gradually failed in health.

Q. When did he die?

A. On the 29th of June, 1852.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party in the Presidential election which occurred in the fall of 1852?

A. General Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, for President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Whig party?

A. General Winfield Scott, of Virginia, for President, and William A. Graham, of North Carolina, for Vice-President.

Q. What did the Whig and Democratic parties pledge themselves to do?

A. To stand by the "Compromise Measures" of 1850.

Q. What was done by the anti-slavery agitators, or Free-soil party?

A. They nominated for the Presidency John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, and for the Vice-Presidency, George W. Julian, of Indiana.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Pierce and King, the Democratic candidates, were elected by an overwhelming majority.

Q. What can you say of the Free-soil ticket?

A. It received no electoral vote, and polled of individual votes only a little more than half of what it had polled in 1848.

Q. By what was the whole country again thrown into mourning?

A. By the announcement of the death of Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, which event occurred on the 23d of October, 1852.

Q. What three great men had died during the administrations of Taylor and Fillmore?

A. Clay, Calhoun, and Webster, who were regarded as the three greatest statesmen of their day.

Q. What have they often been called?

A. "The Immortal Trio."

CHAPTER XV.

Administration of Franklin Pierce.

Q. WHEN was Franklin Pierce, the fourteenth President of the United States, inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1853.

Q. What was among the first things that occupied the attention of the new administration?

A. A dispute between the United States and Mexico on a question of boundary.

Q. How was this dispute settled?

A. It was settled by negotiation.

Q. What Territory was acquired by the treaty which was made?

A. The Territory now known as Arizona.

Q. How much did the United States pay for Arizona?

A. Ten millions of dollars.

Q. When was the slavery agitation renewed in Congress?

A. On the 4th of January, 1854, when the bill known as the Kansas and Nebraska Bill was introduced by Mr. Douglas, of Illinois.

Q. What did the Kansas and Nebraska Bill provide for?

A. It provided for the formation of Territorial governments for Kansas and Nebraska.

Q. What did it seek to carry out?

A. The policy agreed upon by the Compromise of 1850.

Q. Did the Kansas and Nebraska Bill become a law?

A. After a protracted and bitter debate, it passed the Senate by a majority of nearly two to one, and the House by a majority of thirteen, after which it received the sanction of the President and became a law.

Q. What plan was now adopted by the abolition agitators?

A. Emigrant Aid Societies were formed by them in the Northern States, and the emigrants sent out by these societies were supplied by them with arms.

Q. What was the object of these societies?

A. Their object was not so much to colonize the Territories as to stir up strife.

Q. What soon ensued?

A. Difficulties between settlers from the North and from the South, which were known as the "Kansas War."

Q. How did the administration finally succeed in restoring the peace?

A. By a faithful maintenance of the laws.

Q. What new party was formed about this time?

A. The American party, or, as it was generally styled, the Know-Nothing party.

Q. What was its distinctive feature?

A. Opposition to the election to office of Roman Catholics or men of foreign birth.

Q. What other new party was formed in 1856?

A. On the 17th of June all the elements of the Anti-Slavery party met in Convention at Philadelphia and organized under the name of Republicans.

Q. Whom did they put forward as candidates?

A. John C. Fremont, of California, for President, and William L. Dayton, of New Jersey, for Vice-President.

Q. What did the Republican party hold to be the duty of Congress?

A. They held it to be the duty of Congress to prohibit slavery in the Territories.

Q. Where was the Convention of the American party held?

A. At Philadelphia also.

Q. Whom did they nominate for President and Vice-President?

A. They nominated Millard Fillmore, of New York, for President, and Andrew J. Donelson, of Tennessee, for Vice-President.

Q. What were the principles of this party?

A. They opposed alien suffrage ; but in regard to the slavery question they pledged themselves to stand by the Compromise Measures of 1850.

Q. Who were put in nomination by the Democratic party ?

A. The Convention of the Democratic party met at Cincinnati, and nominated for the Presidency James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, and for the Vice-Presidency, John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky.

Q. What did the Democratic party pledge themselves to do ?

A. They pledged themselves to stand by the Compromise of 1850.

Q. What was the result of the election ?

A. Mr. Buchanan was elected President, and Mr. Breckinridge Vice-President.

Q. What was the vote by States ?

A. Nineteen States voted the Democratic ticket, eleven voted the Republican, while the American party carried but one State.

GENERAL REVIEW.

I. Soon after the establishment of the Government of the United States under the Federal Constitution, ¹*several amendments to that instrument were proposed by Congress, and adopted by the States.* At the second session of the First Congress an act was passed declaring that after ²*the year 1790* the seat of government should be at Philadelphia until ³*the year 1800*, when it should be permanently located within a district of territory not exceeding ten miles square, situated on the eastern bank of the Potomac. The name given to this territory was the District of Columbia, while the seat of government was called Washington, in honor of the President. In the year 1790 troubles arose with the Creek Indians of Georgia, and also among the tribes west of the Ohio. The troubles with

the Creeks were settled ⁴*by a treaty*, but the Western tribes remained hostile. General Harmer was sent against these Western tribes, but ⁵*was defeated in two battles and relieved of his command*. His successor, General St. Clair, ⁶*was also disastrously defeated*. In 1794, ⁷*General Wayne* marched against these Indians, totally defeated them, and laid waste their country, after which they were glad to make peace on any terms. In 1792 occurred ⁸*the Whisky Insurrection in Pennsylvania, which was subdued without bloodshed*.

I.—1. What happened soon after the establishment of the Government under the Constitution? 2. When was the seat of government removed to Philadelphia? 3. When to Washington? 4. How were the troubles with the Creek Indians of Georgia settled? 5. What was the result of General Harmer's expedition against the tribes of the Northwest? 6. What of General St. Clair? 7. Who totally defeated the Indians and made them sue for peace? 8. What occurred in 1792?

II. In 1792, Washington was elected President for a second term, with John Adams for Vice-President. During his second term Washington was much annoyed ¹*by the conduct of Genet and Adet, Ministers to the United States from the French Republic*. During this term treaties were made ²*with England, Spain, and Algiers*, settling questions in dispute between those countries and the United States. By the treaty with Spain ³*the United States secured for a period of ten years the free navigation of the Mississippi*, which river at that time belonged to Spain.

In 1796, since Washington refused to be a candidate for a third term, ⁴*John Adams, of Massachusetts*, was elected President, while ⁵*Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia*, was elected Vice-President. During Washington's administration the States of ⁶*Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee* were organized and admitted into the Union. During Mr. Adams's administration serious troubles occurred between the United States and France, and, in anticipation of war, ⁷*Washington* was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces. Though ⁸*war was never declared* between the two nations, yet ⁹*several engagements occurred between their ships of war*, in which

¹⁰ *the Americans* had decidedly the advantage. The troubles with France were ended in 1801, ¹¹ *by a treaty made with Napoleon Bonaparte*, who had then become First Consul of the French Republic. Before the conclusion of this treaty the whole country was filled with sorrow ¹² *by the death of George Washington, the illustrious Father of his country.*

II.—1. By what was Washington much annoyed during his second term? 2. With what nations were treaties made? 3. What was secured by the treaty with Spain? 4. Who was elected President in 1796? 5. Who Vice-President? 6. What new States were admitted during Washington's administration? 7. In anticipation of war with France, who was appointed to command the American armies? 8. Was war ever declared against France? 9. Yet what occurred? 10. Who had the advantage? 11. How were the troubles with France ended? 12. By what was the whole country filled with sorrow?

III. ¹ *The Alien and Sedition Acts* made Mr. Adams's administration very unpopular, and in 1800 ² *he was defeated for the Presidency by Mr. Jefferson, of Virginia.* At the same time ³ *Aaron Burr, of New York,* was elected Vice-President. The most important event of Mr. Jefferson's administration was ⁴ *the purchase from France of the Louisiana Territory, embracing the vast region lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains,* out of which several of the most flourishing States of the Union have since been formed. In 1803, Georgia ceded to the control of the General Government ⁵ *nearly one hundred thousand square miles of territory, out of which the States of Alabama and Mississippi were afterwards formed.* In 1803 the United States became involved in war with Tripoli, but ⁶ *the Tripolitans were soon defeated and brought to terms.* In 1804, Mr. Jefferson was re-elected President. ⁷ *George Clinton, of New York,* was elected Vice-President. Colonel Burr, who was Vice-President during Mr. Jefferson's first term, had brought great odium upon himself ⁸ *by the duel in which he killed Colonel Alexander Hamilton.* Never afterwards was he trusted and honored by the people. ⁹ *The injuries to American commerce caused by the British "Orders in Council" and the "French Decrees"* demanded the attention of

Mr. Jefferson soon after his second inauguration. The feeling of hostility to England was increased in June, 1807, ¹⁰*by the unprovoked attack upon the American frigate Chesapeake by the British ship of war Leopard.* In December, 1807, Congress passed ¹¹*an Embargo Act*, but ¹²*on account of its unpopularity in the New England States* the act was soon repealed. It was in 1807 that ¹³*Robert Fulton, of New York, invented the steamboat.*

III.—1. What made Mr. Adams's administration unpopular? 2. What happened in 1800? 3. Who was elected Vice-President at the same time? 4. What was the most important event of Mr. Jefferson's administration? 5. What territory was ceded to the control of the General Government by Georgia in 1803? 6. What was the result of a war with Tripoli? 7. Who was elected Vice-President on the ticket with Mr. Jefferson in 1804? 8. How had Burr brought great odium upon himself? 9. What soon demanded the attention of Mr. Jefferson? 10. How was the feeling of hostility to England increased? 11. What act was passed in 1807? 12. Why was it repealed? 13. What important invention in 1807?

IV. In November, 1808, ¹*James Madison, of Virginia*, was elected President, and ²*George Clinton, of New York*, Vice-President. During Mr. Jefferson's administration ³*Ohio*, the first State formed out of the Northwestern Territory (the greater part of which vast region had been ceded to the General Government by Virginia soon after the Revolution), was admitted into the Union. Early in Madison's administration ⁴*a Non-Intercourse Act was passed, forbidding United States vessels from trading with either England or France so long as either of these nations should continue in the course which they were pursuing with regard to neutral vessels.* This act was discontinued with regard to France ⁵*when the "French Decrees" were repealed.* The course of England towards the United States ⁶*continued to be overbearing and insolent*, the British Government asserting the right to search American vessels upon the high seas. On the 16th of May, 1811, ⁷*a combat occurred between the American frigate President and the British sloop of war Little Belt*, in which the British vessel was worsted. The feeling of hostility to England was increased ⁸*by Indian depre-*

dations in the Northwest, which were attributed to the instigation of British agents. ⁹*General William Henry Harrison* was sent against the Indians, and totally defeated them at Tippecanoe, in Indiana. On the 8th of April, 1812, the State of ¹⁰*Louisiana*, which was formed out of a part of the territory purchased from France, was admitted into the Union. On the 20th of April, ¹¹*George Clinton*, the Vice-President, died, and was succeeded ¹²*by William H. Crawford*, of Georgia.

IV.—1. Who was elected President in 1808? 2. Who Vice-President? 3. Which was the first State formed out of the Northwestern Territory? 4. What act was passed early in Madison's administration? 5. When was this act discontinued with regard to France? 6. What of the course of England towards the United States? 7. What occurred on the 16th of May, 1811? 8. How was the hostility to England increased? 9. Who defeated the Indians at Tippecanoe? 10. What happened on the 8th of April, 1812? 11. What happened on the 20th of April? 12. By whom was Clinton succeeded?

V. The English Government continuing its insolent course towards the United States, war was declared by Congress ¹*on the 18th of June*, 1812. In the fall of the same year ²*Madison* was re-elected President, and *Elbridge Gerry*, of Massachusetts, was elected Vice-President. During the first campaign of the war with England ³*the land-forces of the Americans suffered some disastrous defeats.* ⁴*General Hull* surrendered Detroit with its garrison on the 16th of August, and another American army was defeated and compelled to surrender ⁵*at Queenstown*, in Canada. As an offset to these disasters, ⁶*the Americans defeated the British at Ogdensburg*, captured a small force of the enemy at the Indian village of *St. Regis*, and successfully defended Fort Wayne against all their assaults. On the ocean the Americans gained the most brilliant triumphs. Their vessels captured ⁷*the British war-vessels Guerriere, Alert, Frolic, Macedonian, and Java*, while their privateers also ⁸*inflicted great damage upon British commerce and captured three thousand prisoners.*

V.—1. When did Congress declare war against England? 2. What happened in the fall of the same year? 3. What of the first campaign?

4. What happened on the 16th of August? 5. Where was another American army compelled to surrender? 6. Mention some offsets to these disasters. 7. What British vessels were captured? 8. What did American privateers do?

VI. The campaign of 1813 began ¹*with a disaster to the Americans at the River Raisin*, but they were victorious ²*at York, in Upper Canada, and at Fort Meigs, and at Fort Sandusky. The Americans also gained an important success at Sackett's Harbor, and ³on Lake Erie* Commodore Perry gained a complete naval victory, which was followed ⁴*by General Harrison's brilliant triumph at the River Thames, in Canada.* Meanwhile, the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama had taken up arms, and had ⁵*surprised Fort Mimms, on the Chattahoochee River, where they massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children.* The militia of Georgia and Tennessee were called out, and the Indians were defeated by the Georgians under General Floyd ⁶*at Calleebee and Autossee*, and by the Tennesseans, under General Coffee, ⁷*at Tallushatchee.* After this, General Jackson, in command of the Georgians and Tennesseans, defeated the savages at ⁸*Talladega, Emuckfau, and Tohopeka*, after which the Indians sued for peace. On the ocean ⁹*the British and Americans both gained important successes.* The Americans lost the Chesapeake and the Argus, but captured the Peacock and the Boxer. The American frigate Essex inflicted considerable damage on British commerce during the year, but at the same time British fleets in the Delaware and Chesapeake destroyed many American merchant-vessels, and burned ¹⁰*Frenchtown, Georgetown, Havre de Grace, and Fredericktown*, but were repulsed in an attack on Norfolk, in Virginia.

VI.—1. How did the campaign of 1813 begin? 2. Where were the Americans victorious? 3. Where did Perry gain an important naval victory? 4. By what was this followed? 5. What did the Creek Indians in Georgia and Alabama do? 6. Where did the Georgians defeat the Indians? 7. Where did the Tennesseans defeat them? 8. What victories were gained over the Indians by General Jackson? 9. What happened on the ocean? 10. What towns were burned by the British?

VII. The first important event of 1814 was ¹*the defeat of the Americans at La Cole Mill, in Canada*; but they were successful ²*at Chippewa, Lundy's Lane, and Fort Erie*. But the greatest victory gained by the Americans during 1814 was ³*the battle of Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain*, in which General Maccomb defeated the British army, while Commodore McDonough defeated the British fleet. Before this battle was fought, a British fleet ascended the Chesapeake, and a land-force under General Ross ⁴*captured Washington City and burned the Government buildings*. Soon after this ⁵*the British were defeated in an attack upon Baltimore, General Ross being among the killed*. During this year ⁶*the United States lost two war-ships, and England lost five*. During the summer and fall of 1814 the New England States became dissatisfied with the management of the war, and a Convention of delegates from these States assembled ⁷*at Hartford, in Connecticut*. The leaders in this movement have been accused ⁸*of an intention to withdraw their States from the Union*. Their grievances were removed, however, ⁹*by the cessation of hostilities*. A treaty of peace between England and the United States was signed ¹⁰*at Ghent, in Belgium, on the 24th of December*. On the 8th of January, fifteen days after the signing of this treaty, but before the news had reached America, was fought ¹¹*the great battle of New Orleans, the most brilliant American victory of the war*. Soon after the peace with England, an American fleet was sent, under Commodore Decatur, ¹²*to chastise the Barbary powers, on the northern coast of Africa, for their violation of the treaty of 1795*. ¹³*The Barbary States were soon brought to terms*. During Madison's administration two new States, ¹⁴*Louisiana and Indiana*, were admitted into the Union. In the fall of 1816, ¹⁵*James Monroe, of Virginia, was elected President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-President*. Mr. Monroe's administration continued ¹⁶*eight years, he and Mr. Tompkins being re-elected in 1820*.

VII.—1. What was the first important event of 1814? 2. Where were the Americans successful? 3. What was the greatest victory gained by the Americans in 1814? 4. What did a British force under General Ross do?

5. What happened soon after this? 6. What was the result of operations on the sea during the year? 7. Where did a Convention of delegates from the New England States assemble in the fall of 1814? 8. Of what have the leaders in this movement been accused? 9. How were their grievances removed? 10. Where and when was a treaty of peace signed? 11. What battle was fought before the news of peace reached America? 12. For what purpose was an American fleet sent to the northern coast of Africa? 13. What was the result? 14. What two States were admitted into the Union during Mr. Madison's administration? 15. What happened in the fall of 1816? 16. How long did Mr. Monroe's administration continue?

VIII. During his first term ¹*Florida was ceded to the United States, together with all Spanish claims to any portion of Oregon.* ²*In 1819 the steamer Savannah sailed across the Atlantic from Savannah to Liverpool, thus demonstrating that steamers could be safely used for ocean navigation.* In 1820 the Union began to be agitated for the first time by the question as to ³*whether the Federal Government had any right to interfere with slavery in the Territories.* The question was settled for the time ⁴*by the Missouri Compromise*, which was in effect a division of the national domain between the Northern and the Southern States. In 1824, ⁵*La Fayette* visited the United States, and was everywhere received with demonstrations of love and esteem. During Mr. Monroe's first term four new States were admitted into the Union, namely, ⁶*Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Maine.* During his second term ⁷*Missouri* was admitted. In the election of 1824 there were ⁸*four* candidates for President, and there was no election by the people. ⁹*John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina*, was elected Vice-President, and, the election of President devolving upon ¹⁰*the House of Representatives*, ¹¹*John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts*, was chosen. The chief events of Mr. Adams's administration were ¹²*the controversy between the Federal Government and the State of Georgia (in which the Georgians finally carried their point) and the Tariff Act of 1828*, which was violently opposed in the South. Although Mr. Adams was a man of irreproachable character, he was not popular, and was defeated in the election of 1828 by ¹³*Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee.* ¹⁴*John C. Calhoun* was again elected Vice-President.

VIII.—1. What important event happened during Mr. Monroe's first term? 2. When did the first steamer sail across the Atlantic? 3. What question began to agitate the Union in 1820? 4. How was the question settled for the time? 5. Who visited the United States in 1824? 6. What four new States were admitted into the Union during Mr. Monroe's first term? 7. What one during his second term? 8. How many candidates were there for President in 1824? 9. Who was chosen Vice-President? 10. Upon whom did the election of President devolve? 11. Who was chosen? 12. What were the chief events of Mr. Adams's administration? 13. Who was elected President in 1828? 14. Who was elected Vice-President?

IX. The first important measure of Jackson's administration was ¹*the removal of the Indian tribes that lived east of the Mississippi River to a portion of country lying west of that river*. This act, though condemned by many, was undoubtedly a wise measure. Jackson's ²*veto of the bill for the re-charter of the United States Bank* rendered him unpopular with many of his former supporters. A war which broke out in 1832 with the Winnebagoes and other Northwestern Indians was soon terminated ³*by the capture of Black Hawk and other chiefs*. In 1832, ⁴*Jackson was re-elected President, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected Vice-President*. In the early part of Jackson's second term occurred a controversy between South Carolina and the Federal Government, which grew out of the opposition of the Carolinians to the Tariff Act of 1832. The difficulty was settled ⁵*by a compromise*. During Jackson's second term he met with violent opposition from Congress ⁶*on account of certain acts of his with reference to the United States Bank*; but Jackson finally triumphed over all opposition. In 1835 a war broke out with the Seminole Indians, in Florida, which lasted until 1842, when it was brought to a close ⁷*by the capture of Osceola, the Seminole chief, and the defeat of the savages by Colonel Zachary Taylor*. Other important events of Jackson's administration were ⁸*the admission of Arkansas and of Michigan into the Union*. In 1836, ⁹*Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, Vice-President*.

IX.—1. What was the first important measure of Jackson's administra-

tion? 2. What rendered Jackson unpopular with many of his former supporters? 3. How was a war with the Winnebago Indians terminated? 4. What happened in 1832? 5. How was a controversy between the Federal Government and South Carolina settled? 6. Why did Jackson meet with violent opposition from Congress? 7. How was a war with the Seminole Indians brought to a close? 8. What were other important events of Jackson's administration? 9. What was the result of the election of 1836?

X. Soon after the inauguration of the new President occurred ¹*a great commercial crisis, which occasioned great distress throughout the country.* The country was also agitated ²*by the subject of the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia,* but the agitation was for the time quieted, to the great satisfaction of all friends of the Union. Mr. Van Buren's administration was not popular, and at the election of 1840 ³*William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, and John Tyler, of Virginia, the candidates of the Whig party, were elected President and Vice-President.* Harrison was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1841, and ⁴*he died on the 4th of April, just one month from the day of his inauguration.* He was succeeded ⁵*by Mr. Tyler, the Vice-President,* who made himself unpopular with the Whigs ⁶*by vetoing several of their party measures.* In 1842 a treaty was made with Great Britain, ⁷*settling definitively the northeastern boundary between the United States and the neighboring British possessions.* During this year occurred ⁸*the celebrated "Dorr Rebellion," in Rhode Island, which was subdued with the loss of one man.* The close of Tyler's administration was occupied ⁹*with negotiations for the annexation of Texas, which had become independent of Mexico and desired to be admitted into the American Union as a State.* The most prominent question in the Presidential election of 1844 was ¹⁰*the annexation of Texas, which the Democrats favored and the Whigs opposed.* The election resulted ¹¹*in the choice of the Democratic candidates, who were James K. Polk, of Tennessee, for President, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, for Vice-President.*

X.—1. What occurred soon after the inauguration of the new President? 2. By what was the country agitated? 3. What was the result of the election

of 1840? 4. What happened just one month from the day of Harrison's inauguration? 5. By whom was he succeeded? 6. How did Mr. Tyler make himself unpopular with the Whigs? 7. What treaty was made with Great Britain in 1842? 8. What occurred during this year? 9. How was the close of Tyler's administration occupied? 10. What was the most prominent question in the Presidential election of 1844? 11. How did the election result?

XI. On the 1st of March, 1845, a few days before the expiration of Mr. Tyler's term, ¹*a joint resolution was adopted by the Congress and approved by the President providing for the annexation of Texas.* On the 3d of March, one day before the inauguration of the new President, ²*Iowa and Florida were admitted into the Union as States.* On the 4th of July, 1845, ³*Texas agreed to the terms of annexation and entered the American Union as a State.* Out of this annexation grew ⁴*the Mexican war*; for Mexico, although unable to conquer Texas, was unwilling for that country to be annexed to the United States. The first battles of the Mexican war were the battles of ⁵*Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma*, fought on the 8th and 9th of May, 1846, in both of which ⁶*the Americans, under General Taylor, were victorious.* During the same year ⁷*Monterey was captured by General Taylor, New Mexico was conquered by General Kearney, and California by a land-force under Colonel Fremont, assisted by a naval force under Commodores Sloat and Stockton.* Colonel Doniphan, another American officer, ⁸*captured Chihuahua, a wealthy city of forty thousand inhabitants.* On the 22d and 23d of February, 1847, General Taylor, with about five thousand men, won the great battle of ⁹*Buena Vista*, over a Mexican army of twenty thousand men, commanded by General Santa Anna. On the 27th of March, 1847, General Scott, with an army of twelve thousand Americans, captured the city of ¹⁰*Vera Cruz*, and then ¹¹*advanced into the interior, where on the 18th of April he gained the great victory of Cerro Gordo, and on the 15th of May occupied the city of Puebla.* After being reinforced he marched against ¹²*the city of Mexico*, which he captured on the 14th of September, after gaining important victories at ¹³*Contreras, Churubusco,*

Molino del Rey, and Chapultepec. The capture of the city of Mexico was soon followed ¹⁴*by a treaty of peace*, which was ratified by the United States Senate on the 10th of March, 1848, and by the Mexican Congress on the 30th of May. By this treaty the United States acquired ¹⁵*undisputed claim to the State of Texas, besides the extensive Territories of New Mexico and Upper California*, for all of which were paid ¹⁶*fifteen millions of dollars*. During the first year of the Mexican war a treaty was made with Great Britain ¹⁷*settling the boundary between Oregon and the British possessions*. Immediately after the Mexican war the Union was agitated ¹⁸*by angry disputes about the territory lately acquired*, some of the Northern members of Congress desiring to exclude slavery from this territory, which the Southern members opposed, insisting that it was a question over which Congress had no control. In the midst of this agitation ¹⁹*Wisconsin* was admitted as a State. Extensive gold-mines having been discovered ²⁰*in the newly-acquired Territory of California*, ²¹*people from all parts of the world flocked there in great numbers, and the population soon numbered more than one hundred thousand*.

XI.—1. What happened on the 1st of March, 1845? 2. What States were admitted into the Union on the 3d of March? 3. What happened on the 4th of July, 1845? 4. What grew out of this annexation? 5. What were the first battles of the Mexican war? 6. What was the result of these battles? 7. Mention other American successes during the same year. 8. What did Colonel Doniphan do? 9. Where did the Americans win a great victory on the 22d and 23d of February? 10. What city did General Scott capture on the 27th of March, 1847? 11. What did he then do? 12. What city did he capture on the 14th of September? 13. What victories did he gain before capturing the city? 14. By what was the capture of Mexico soon followed? 15. What did the United States acquire by this treaty? 16. What was paid for all this territory? 17. What treaty was made with Great Britain during the first year of the Mexican war? 18. By what was the Union agitated immediately after the Mexican war? 19. What State was admitted about this time? 20. Where were extensive gold-mines discovered? 21. What was the result of this discovery?

XII. In the Presidential election of 1848 ¹*General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, was elected President, and Millard Fillmore,*

of New York, Vice-President. These were the candidates ² of the Whig party. When Congress assembled in December, ³ the slavery agitation was renewed. On the 31st of March, 1850, in the midst of the exciting times which ensued, the great Southern statesman, ⁴ John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, died, and on the 9th of July the country was shocked ⁵ by the death of General Taylor. ⁶ Mr. Fillmore now became President. He gave a cordial support ⁷ to the efforts of Clay and Webster to bring about a satisfactory adjustment of the dispute between the North and the South, which was at length accomplished in the latter part of the summer ⁸ by the "Compromise Measures of 1850." Under this adjustment, which established ⁹ the principle of the non-interference of Congress with slavery in the Territories or the States, ¹⁰ California was admitted into the Union. On the 29th of June, 1852, the Union was filled with sorrow by the death of ¹¹ Henry Clay, the great Kentucky statesman, and on the 23d of October of the same year the death of ¹² Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, the last of the "Immortal Trio," spread gloom through every State and section. The election held in the fall of 1852 resulted ¹³ in the choice of the Democratic candidates, who were Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, for President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President.

XII.—1. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1848? 2. Of which party were these the candidates? 3. What happened when Congress assembled in December? 4. What great Southern statesman died on the 31st of March, 1850? 5. By what was the country shocked on the 9th of July? 6. Who now became President? 7. To what did he give a cordial support? 8. How was this at length accomplished? 9. What did this adjustment establish? 10. What State was admitted into the Union under this adjustment? 11. What great statesman died on the 29th of June, 1852? 12. What one on the 23d of October? 13. How did the Presidential election of 1852 result?

XIII. In the first part of the new administration ¹ Arizona was purchased from Mexico for the sum of ten million dollars. ² On the 4th of January, 1854, when the "Kansas and Nebraska

Bill was introduced by Mr. Douglas, of Illinois, the slavery agitation was renewed in Congress. The bill ³was finally passed, and received the sanction of the President. Then followed ⁴difficulties between Northern and Southern settlers in Kansas, which were with difficulty suppressed by the President. About this time ⁵the American, or Know-Nothing party was formed, whose distinctive feature was ⁶opposition to the election to office of Roman Catholics and men of foreign birth. On the 17th of June, 1856, ⁷all the elements of the Anti-slavery party met in Convention in Philadelphia, and organized under the name of Republicans. They put forward as candidates ⁸John C. Fremont, of California, for President, and William L. Dayton, of New Jersey, for Vice-President. The nominees of the American party were ⁹Millard Fillmore, of New York, for President, and Andrew J. Donelson, of Tennessee, for Vice-President. The Democrats nominated for the ¹⁰Presidency James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, and for the Vice-Presidency, John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The election resulted ¹¹in the choice of the Democratic candidates.

XIII.—1. What happened in the first part of the new administration? 2. When was the slavery agitation renewed in Congress? 3. What became of the Kansas and Nebraska Bill? 4. What then followed? 5. What new party was formed about this time? 6. What was the distinctive feature of this party? 7. What happened on the 17th of June, 1856? 8. Whom did they put forward as candidates? 9. Who were the nominees of the American party? 10. Whom did the Democratic party nominate? 11. How did the election result?

PART FOURTH.

CHAPTER I.

Administration of James Buchanan.

Q. WHEN was James Buchanan, the fifteenth President, inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1857.

Q. What first engaged the attention of the new administration?

A. The state of affairs in Utah and Kansas.

Q. What was the source of trouble in Utah?

A. The Mormons, a sect of religionists who tolerated a plurality of wives.

Q. What can you say of these people?

A. They had been driven from Illinois, and had settled in the valley of the Great Salt Lake some years before the acquisition of Utah by the United States.

Q. What had Mr. Fillmore done on the organization of a government for the Territory of Utah?

A. He had appointed Brigham Young, the leader of this sect, Governor of the Territory.

Q. What intelligence was received at Washington about the time of the accession of Mr. Buchanan to the Presidency?

A. Intelligence was received of serious difficulties between the Governor, Brigham Young, and certain subordinate officers of the Federal Government.

Q. What were the Mormons supposed to be doing?

A. They were supposed to be preparing to resist the execution of the laws of the United States in the Territory.

Q. Who was sent into the Territory?

A. Colonel Albert Sydney Johnston, with a sufficient force to execute the laws.

Q. When did the expedition set out?

A. Early in the summer of 1857.

Q. When was the "Mormon War" (as it was called) brought to a close?

A. In the summer of 1858.

Q. What decision was rendered by the Supreme Court of the United States soon after Mr. Buchanan's inauguration?

A. The Court decided that Congress had no power to prohibit slavery in any of the Territories of the Union.

Q. Did this decision of the Supreme Court quiet the slavery agitation?

A. It did not: it only tended to rouse the abolition agitators still more.

Q. What did the abolition agitators now do?

A. They made every effort to bring on a conflict of arms in Kansas; and by their influence the Legislatures of several Northern States passed laws which practically nullified the laws of Congress as to the rendition of fugitive slaves.

Q. Who was sent to Kansas as a special agent for the purpose of bringing about a better state of feeling in the Territory?

A. Mr. Robert J. Walker, of Mississippi.

Q. Did he succeed?

A. He did not.

Q. What did the Free-soil party in Kansas do?

A. They refused to take part in the formation of a Constitution under the act of Congress, and would not vote on its ratification when it was submitted to all the legal voters of the Territory for their adoption or rejection.

Q. What was the result of their refusal to take any part in forming a Constitution, or in the subsequent election for its ratification or rejection?

A. The result was the formation and ratification of a Constitution tolerating slavery.

Q. What was this Constitution called?

A. The Lecompton Constitution.

Q. When Kansas applied for admission into the Union under the Lecompton Constitution, what took place in Congress?

A. A bitter and exciting debate.

Q. What happened on the 23d of March, 1858?

A. A bill to admit the State under the Lecompton Constitution passed the Senate by a majority of eight.

Q. What was done with the bill in the House?

A. A substitute was adopted in place of the Senate bill.

Q. When both Houses adhered to their previous votes, what was done?

A. A Committee of Conference was finally raised.

Q. What was done by this Committee?

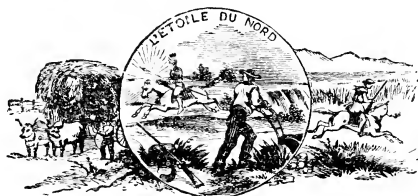
A. They reported a new bill for the admission of Kansas, under conditional terms as to boundary and public domain "first to be approved by them.

Q. What took place during the debates on the admission of Kansas?

A. A split in the Democratic party, which was destined to bring disaster and great suffering upon the whole country.

Q. When was Minnesota admitted into the Union as a State?

A. On the 11th of May, 1858.



SEAL OF MINNESOTA.

Q. For what is the 16th day of August, 1858, notable?

A. For the completion of the Ocean Telegraph between Great Britain and the United States.

Q. For what else is this same month notable?

A. For the appearance of a large and magnificent comet.

Q. When was Oregon admitted into the Union as a State?

A. On the 14th of February, 1859.



SEAL OF OREGON.

Q. What occurred on the 17th of October, 1859?

A. The celebrated John Brown raid.

Q. Give an account of this.

A. John Brown, a notorious Kansas ruffian, urged on by abolition agitators and furnished by them with money, raised arms and men, and seized the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry, in Virginia.

Q. What was his purpose?

A. His purpose was to incite the negro slaves in Virginia and throughout the South to rise against their masters.

Q. Had he succeeded, what would have been the result?

A. The whole country would have been deluged in blood, and mourning would have filled the land.

Q. Did he meet with any encouragement from the negroes?

A. He did not.

Q. What became of him?

A. His forces were scattered by the United States marines led by Colonel Robert E. Lee, and he himself was captured, tried under the laws of Virginia, and met upon the gallows the fate he richly merited.

Q. What greatly increased the indignation of the people of the Southern States?

A. The fact that the official authorities of those Northern States that were under the control of the Republican party applauded the outrageous conduct of John Brown.

Q. How did the people of the Southern States feel about the sympathy shown by many members of the Republican party?

A. They felt that if the Republican party should succeed in the next Presidential election there would be no security for the liberties and institutions of the Southern States.

Q. What other evil consequence followed the John Brown raid and the sympathy shown for John Brown in so many portions of the North?

A. Many Southerners who had heretofore been devoted friends of the Union now became convinced that in the event of the success of the Republican party the only course left to the Southern States would be to withdraw from the Union.

Q. When the Presidential election of 1860 took place, what was the state of affairs?

A. The conservative elements of the country, instead of being united, were divided among themselves, while the Republicans, embracing in their ranks not only Free-soilers, but also the most fanatical abolitionists, were united and enthusiastic.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Republican party?

A. Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, for President, and Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were nominated by one wing of the Democratic party?

A. Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, for President, and Herschel V. Johnson, of Georgia, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were nominated by another wing of the same party?

A. John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for President, and Joseph Lane, of Oregon, for Vice-President.

Q. What was done by that portion of the conservatives known as the American party?

A. They nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, for President, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Abraham Lincoln and Hannibal Hamlin, the Republican candidates, were elected.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

Q. What was done in South Carolina as soon as the result of the election became known?

A. A Sovereign Convention of the people was called, and an ordinance of secession was passed on the 20th of December, 1860.

Q. What was one of the reasons assigned for passing the ordinance of secession?

A. One of the reasons was, that most of the Northern States had failed to fulfill their constitutional obligations in the rendition of fugitives from service.

Q. What was another reason which had great weight with the Southern people?

A. That Iowa and Ohio had refused to surrender fugitives from justice charged with murder and with attempting to incite servile insurrection at the time of the John Brown raid.

Q. What was the chief reason?

A. The danger to the rights of the States that was to be dreaded from the avowed principles of the Republican party.

Q. What six Southern States followed the example of South Carolina in passing an ordinance of secession?

A. Mississippi, on the 9th of January, 1861; Florida, on the 10th; Alabama, on the 11th; Georgia, on the 19th; Louisiana, on the 26th; and Texas, on the 1st of February.

Q. Where and when did all these States that had thus passed ordinances of secession meet by delegates?

A. At Montgomery, in Alabama, on the 4th of February, 1861.

Q. What did they do?

A. They organized a new Union and formed a new Constitution, under the name of "The Confederate States of America."

Q. What can you say of the new Constitution?

A. It was modeled after that of the United States.

Q. What was first instituted?

A. A provisional government for one year, with Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, for President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, for Vice-President.



JEFFERSON DAVIS.



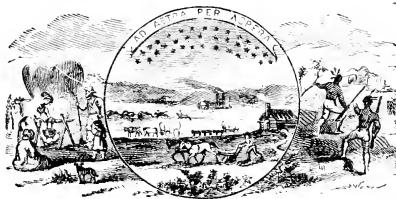
ALEXANDER H. STEPHENS.

Q. When was the Constitution for the permanent government to take effect?

A. On the 22d of February, 1862.

Q. What occurred on the 29th of January, 1861?

A. The State of Kansas was admitted by the Congress of the United States into the Federal Union.



SEAL OF KANSAS.

Q. By what State were especial efforts made to bring about a reconciliation between the Northern and Southern States?

A. By Virginia.

Q. What was done at the instance of Virginia?

A. An informal Peace Congress of all the States was called to meet in Washington.

Q. How many States were represented in the Peace Congress?

A. Twenty: thirteen Northern, and seven Southern.

Q. Who presided over the Peace Congress?

A. Ex-President John Tyler, of Virginia.

Q. Was anything accomplished by this Peace Congress?

A. Nothing.

Q. What was done by the Confederate Government at Montgomery?

A. Three Commissioners were sent to Washington to treat with the Federal authorities for a peaceful adjustment of all matters pertaining to the common property and the public debt.

Q. How did President Buchanan receive them?

A. He received them as private gentlemen, but refused to acknowledge them in their official capacity.

Q. What had the seceded States already done?

A. They had already taken possession of all the Federal forts and arsenals within their limits, except Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor, Fort Pickens, at Pensacola, and the forts near Key West, Florida.

Q. Did President Buchanan make any attempt to retake these forts?

A. He did not.

Q. To what position did he hold?

A. He held that a State could not rightfully secede, but he also believed that Congress had no power under the Constitution to resort to coercive measures against the regularly constituted authorities of a State.

Q. In this condition of affairs, what happened?

A. Mr. Buchanan's term of office expired, and he retired to his home near Lancaster, Pennsylvania.

CHAPTER II.

Administration of Abraham Lincoln.—First Year of the War between the States.

Q. WHEN was Abraham Lincoln, the sixteenth President of the United States, inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1861.

Q. What did he declare in his inaugural to be his purpose?

A. He declared that it was his purpose to collect the public revenues at the ports of the seceded States, and also to recover all the forts, arsenals, and other public property before held by the Federal authorities.

Q. What was done by the Confederate Commissioners on the 12th of March?

A. They addressed a note to Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, declaring that the people of the Confederate States earnestly desired a peaceable solution of all questions at issue between them and the Government of the United States.

Q. What else did they declare?

A. That it was neither their interest nor their wish to make any demand not founded in strictest justice, or to do any act that would injure their late confederates.

Q. How did Mr. Seward reply to the Commissioners?

A. He replied to them verbally and informally through Justice John A. Campbell, of the Supreme Court of the United States.

Q. Who was Justice John A. Campbell?

A. He was a citizen of Alabama, and on terms of personal friendship with the Commissioners, and was exceedingly desirous of effecting a reconciliation.

Q. What were the names of the Confederate Commissioners?

A. John Forsyth, of Alabama, Martin J. Crawford, of Georgia, and Andrew B. Roman, of Louisiana.

Q. What was the reply of Mr. Seward to the Commissioners made through Justice Campbell?

A. That he was in favor of peace, and that Fort Sumter, in Charleston harbor, would be evacuated in less than ten days, even before a letter could go from Washington to Montgomery.

Q. What assurance did he give them in regard to Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, Florida?

A. That notice would be given of any design to alter the status there.

Q. In the mean time, what were going on in the navy-yard at New York?

A. Active preparations for war were going on.

Q. What was done early in April?

A. A squadron of seven ships, carrying two hundred and eighty-five guns and two thousand four hundred men, was fitted out at New York and Norfolk, Virginia.

Q. When the Commissioners heard of this, what did they fear?

A. They feared that this armament was designed for the relief of Fort Sumter.

Q. When Justice Campbell, at their request, addressed a letter to Mr. Seward desiring information on this point, what was his reply?

A. "Faith as to Sumter fully kept; wait and see."

Q. Was faith as to Sumter fully kept?

A. It was not, for the fleet was at this very time on its way to reinforce the fort.

Q. What did Judge Campbell do soon after this?

A. Believing in the justice of the Southern cause, he resigned his seat on the Supreme Court Bench.

Q. By whom was Fort Sumter commanded?

A. By Major Robert Anderson, of the United States army, with less than a hundred men.

Q. Who was in command of the Confederate forces in Charleston harbor?

A. General Gustave T. Beauregard.

Q. What did his force number?

A. About six thousand men.

Q. Though faith as to Sumter was not *fully* kept by Mr. Seward, what did he do?

A. He gave notice on the 8th of April, not to the Commissioners, but to Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, that a fleet was on its way to reinforce the fort.

Q. What demand did Beauregard now make of Major Anderson?

A. He demanded the evacuation of the fort.

Q. Did Major Anderson comply with his request?

A. He did not.

Q. What was done on the morning of the 12th of April, 1861?

A. The Confederates opened fire on the fort, and on the morning of the 13th, after a terrific bombardment, the fort was surrendered.

Q. What was the loss on both sides?

A. Strange to say, no life was lost on either side during all this bombardment

Q. What was the result in the North of the news of the fall of Fort Sumter?

A. The news of the fall of Fort Sumter produced the wildest excitement throughout the North.

Q. What did Mr. Lincoln do on the 15th of April?

A. He issued a proclamation calling for seventy-five thousand troops, and convening Congress to meet in extra session on the 4th of July.

Q. How was Mr. Lincoln's call for troops met by the Confederate Government at Montgomery?

A. By a call for volunteers to repel aggressions.

Q. What was the effect of Mr. Lincoln's call for troops in the border States of Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Kentucky, Arkansas, and Missouri?

A. It excited alarm and indignation.

Q. What four of these border States held Conventions and withdrew from the Union?

A. Virginia, on the 17th of April, Arkansas, on the 6th of May, North Carolina, on the 20th of May, and Tennessee, on the 8th of June.

Q. What did they then do?

A. They joined the new Confederation.

Q. What response was given to Mr. Lincoln's call for troops in the Northern States?

A. The Northern States responded promptly to the call.

Q. What happened in Baltimore as some of the Northern troops passed through the city?

A. A bloody riot occurred between the troops and citizens, in which several lives were lost.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 19th of April.

Q. When was the seat of government of the Confederate States transferred from Montgomery, Alabama, to Richmond, Virginia?

A. On the 21st of May, soon after Virginia had joined the Confederate States.

Q. What name is frequently applied to all those who sided with the Government of the United States during the war between the Northern and Southern States?

A. The name of Federals.

Q. By what name were those known who sided with the Confederate Government?

A. By the name of Confederates.

Q. When the United States Senators and Representatives assembled in Congress in July, what did they do?

A. They provided for raising an army of five hundred thousand men and the fitting out of a formidable navy.

Q. What did they declare with regard to the prosecution of the war?

A. They declared that they prosecuted the war not for any

purpose of conquest, nor with any design of interfering with the established institutions of the Southern States.

Q. For what purpose did they assert that they were prosecuting the war?

A. Only for the purpose of maintaining the supremacy of the Constitution and of preserving the Union, with all the dignity, equality, and rights of the several States unimpaired.

Q. When did the Federal forces begin the invasion of Virginia?

A. Towards the last of May.

Q. Give an account of the movements of the Federal troops.

A. On the 24th of May a New York regiment, led by Colonel Ellsworth, took possession of Alexandria, Virginia. On entering the place, Ellsworth was slain by a Mr. J. W. Jackson, who was also himself immediately killed. Grafton, in Northwest Virginia, was occupied by a Federal force on the 29th of May, and on the 3d of June a small Confederate force was dispersed at Philippi by a much larger Federal force.

Q. Where did the first engagement of any note take place?

A. Near Fortress Monroe, in Southeastern Virginia, at Big Bethel Church, on the 10th of June.

Q. What was the result of this conflict?

A. The Confederates, under Colonel D. H. Hill, defeated the Federals, led by General Benjamin F. Butler.

Q. What disaster befell the Confederates in Northwestern Virginia on the 11th of July?

A. A Confederate force of nine hundred men was captured at Rich Mountain by the Federals, led by General McClellan.

Q. What occurred on the 14th of July?

A. The Confederate General Garnett, at the head of about two thousand men, while retreating from Laurel Hill, was defeated at Carrick's Ford by a Federal army of nearly eight thousand men. Garnett was killed and his men were scattered.

Q. To what place did the Confederates retreat?

A. To Monterey, a village in the mountains of Virginia, where they were reinforced by General Henry R. Jackson, of Georgia.

Q. What did the Confederates afterwards do?

A. They advanced again, and fortified a position at the foot of Alleghany Mountains, near the Greenbrier River.

Q. What was done by the Federal forces?

A. They seized and fortified the gaps of Cheat Mountain.

Q. What occurred on the 17th of July, three days after the defeat of Garnett at Carrick's Ford?

A. The Confederate General Wise defeated a Federal force at Scary Creek, in Western Virginia.

Q. In the mean time, what was being done in Eastern Virginia, in the neighborhood of Washington City?

A. Both the Federals and the Confederates were making every effort to collect large armies.

Q. What happened on the 18th of July?

A. The advance of the Federal army, led by General Tyler, was repulsed by the Confederate advance, commanded by General Longstreet.

Q. What occurred three days later, on the 21st of July?

A. The first great battle of the war, near Manassas Junction.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Confederate army of about thirty thousand, commanded by Generals Beauregard and Joseph E. Johnston, routed the Federal army of nearly sixty thousand men, led by General Irwin McDowell. The Federal troops did not cease their retreat until they were safe within their fortifications at Washington.

Q. What were the losses on both sides in this battle?

A. The Confederate loss was nearly three thousand killed and wounded, while the Federal army lost nearly five thousand men killed, wounded, and prisoners, twenty-eight cannon, ten battle-flags, five thousand muskets, and five hundred thousand cartridges.

Q. What occurred a few days after the battle of Manassas?

A. General Scott resigned his position as commander-in-chief of the Federal army, and his place was filled by General George B. McClellan.



BATTLE OF MANASSAS.

Q. What engagement occurred in Western Virginia on the 26th of August?

A. The Confederates, under General John B. Floyd, surprised and routed a Federal force commanded by Colonel Tyler, inflicting on them a loss of two hundred men, and losing none themselves.

Q. With what success did the Federals meet on the coast of North Carolina on the 29th of August?

A. A Federal land and naval force captured the forts on Hatteras Inlet, with sixty-five cannon, and six hundred and fifteen prisoners.

Q. Where and when was another battle fought in Western Virginia?

A. At Carnifex Ferry, on the Gauley River, on the 10th of September.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Floyd, with about two thousand Confederates, held his ground from three o'clock in the afternoon until night against ten thousand Federals, commanded by General Rosecrans. Floyd's position was a strong one, and his men were well protected. During the night Floyd retired to a stronger position.

Q. What was the loss on both sides?

A. The Federal loss was about two hundred, while Floyd had but one man killed.

Q. Who soon after came up with reinforcements?

A. General Robert E. Lee, who had been operating in the vicinity of Cheat Mountain.

Q. After General Lee's forces had left the vicinity of Cheat Mountain, what was done by the Federal General Reynolds?

A. He came down from his fortified camp on Cheat Mountain and attacked a smaller Confederate force, under General H. R. Jackson, at the Greenbrier River, but met with a bloody repulse, and fell back to his fortifications.

Q. When was this?

A. On the 8th of October.

Q. What great victory was gained by the Confederates on the 2d of October?

A. The battle at Leesburg, on the Potomac, where the Confederates under General Nathan G. Evans utterly defeated the Federals under Colonel Baker, and drove them into the river.

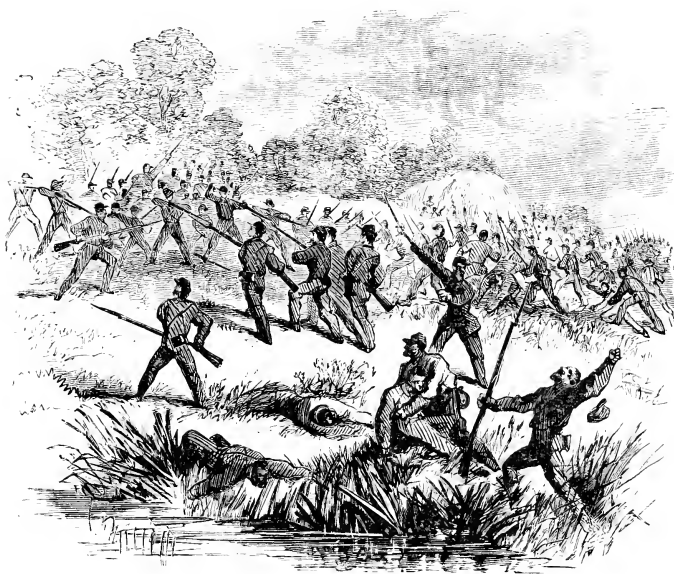
Q. With what success did the Federals meet on the 7th of November?

A. A Federal fleet took possession of the forts at Port Royal, South Carolina.

Q. What victory was gained by the Confederates on the 12th of December?

A. Colonel Edward Johnson, commanding Virginia and Georgia troops, inflicted a disastrous repulse on the Federal General Milroy, at Alleghany Summit, in Western Virginia.

Q. Where did a Federal brigade of the Army of the Potomac gain a slight advantage on the 20th of December?



BATTLE OF LEESEURG.

A. At Dranesville.

Q. While the opposing armies were thus active in Virginia, what was going on in the West?

A. Active operations were likewise going on in the West.

Q. What had Governor Jackson and the State authorities of Missouri attempted to do at the beginning of the war?

A. They had attempted to maintain a neutral position between the parties at war.

Q. How had this been prevented?

A. By Captain Lyon, the Federal officer in command at St. Louis, who on the 25th of April seized the State arsenal, and on the 10th of May routed the State militia.

Q. To what rank was Captain Lyon appointed soon after this?

A. To the rank of brigadier-general.

Q. What now occurred in Missouri?

A. Civil war, in which some of the Missourians sided with the United States Government and some with the Government of the Confederate States.

Q. When Governor Jackson found that he was obliged to take sides with one party or the other, what did he do?

A. He sided with the Confederates.

Q. What happened on the 5th of July?

A. General Sterling Price, in command of Missouri troops, and General McCulloch, in command of a Confederate force from Texas and Arkansas, defeated a Federal force at Carthage.

Q. When did they gain a much more decided victory?

A. On the 10th of August, at Oak Hill. In this battle General Lyon was killed.

Q. What great victory was gained by General Price on the 20th of September?

A. He captured Lexington, Missouri, with more than three thousand prisoners.

Q. What victory was gained by the Confederates in Missouri on the 7th of November, the same day on which the Federal fleet captured Port Royal, South Carolina?

A. The victory at Belmont, won by the Confederates under General Pillow over the Federals under General Grant.

Q. While these stirring events were going on in Missouri, what had the Governor and State authorities of Kentucky done?

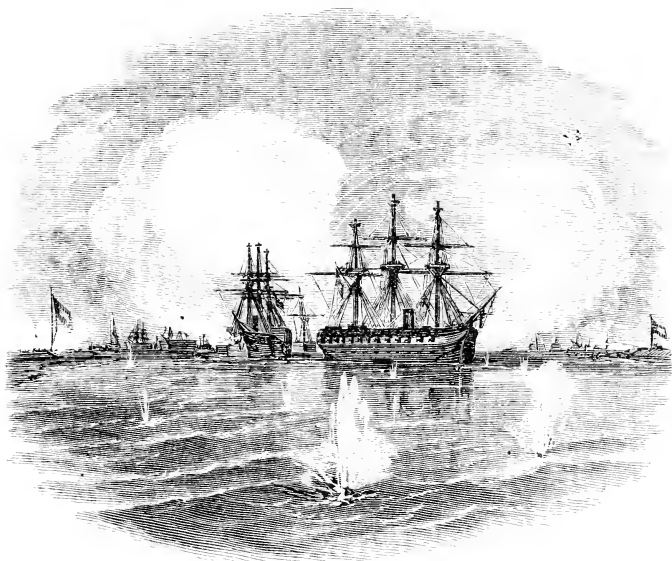
A. They had attempted, as those of Missouri had done, to hold a position of armed neutrality between the States at war, but the attempt had failed in this case as it had done in the other.

Q. What was done in Kentucky during the fall?

A. A portion of the people of the State organized a provisional government and attempted to ally the State with the Confederate cause.

Q. Did they succeed?

A. They did not; for the regular State Legislature and the vast majority of the people of the State sided with the United States.



BOMBARDMENT OF PORT ROYAL.

Q. Did Missouri ever join the Southern Confederacy?

A. The people of Missouri were divided, like those of Kentucky, most of the citizens of the southern part of the State taking sides with the Confederate States, but a very large majority of the people of the whole State taking part with the Government of the United States.

Q. What election was held throughout the Confederate States on the 6th of November?

A. An election for President and Vice-President, under their Constitution, for a permanent government.

Q. Who were elected?

A. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, were unanimously elected President and Vice-President.

Q. Who was sent out in November by the Richmond Govern-

ment to take charge of the Confederate forces on the coast of Georgia and South Carolina?

A. General Robert E. Lee, of Virginia.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

Q. What event occurred about this time at sea which came near involving the Federal Government in a war with Great Britain?

A. The seizure of the Confederate ambassadors Slidell and Mason, who were on board the British steam-packet Trent, by Captain Wilkes, commanding the United States steam-frigate San Jacinto.

Q. How was the matter finally disposed of?

A. The Federal Government disavowed the act of Captain Wilkes, and restored the ambassadors to a British vessel.

Q. What can you say of Confederate naval operations during the first year of the war?

A. The Federals having possession of the entire common navy, the Confederates had to resort at first to the enlistment of private armed ships.

Q. What was accomplished by Confederate privateers?

A. Several small vessels ran the blockade and got out to sea, and in less than a month more than twenty prizes were taken and run into Southern ports.

Q. What two steamers were fitted out by the Confederate Government?

A. The Sumter and the Nashville, under the command of regular officers who had resigned their position in the Federal navy.

Q. Who commanded the Sumter?

A. Raphael Semmes, of Alabama.

Q. Who commanded the Nashville?

A. Captain Robert B. Pegram, of Virginia.

Q. What was accomplished during the year by the small Confederate navy?

A. Merchandise to the value of many millions was captured, and the foreign trade of the Northern States was greatly crippled.

Q. When the year 1861 came to a close, who had the advantage?

A. The advantage was greatly on the side of the Confederate States, both in the number of victories achieved and in the number of prisoners captured.

CHAPTER III.

Second Year of the War between the States.

Q. WHAT was the size of the respective armies of the Confederate States and the United States at the beginning of the year 1862?

A. The Confederates had in the field about three hundred thousand men, while the Federals had not less than eight hundred thousand.

Q. Where was the first movement of troops made in January, 1862?

A. In Virginia, by the Confederate General Thomas J. Jackson.

Q. By what name is General Jackson familiarly known?

A. By the name of Stonewall Jackson.

Q. How did he get this name?

A. From the firmness with which his brigade withstood the charge of the overwhelming numbers of the Federals at the great battle of Manassas.

Q. Give an account of the expedition which he led in the first part of January, 1862.

A. On the 1st of January, 1862, General Stonewall Jackson

set out from Winchester with a little more than ten thousand men, drove the Federals out of Bath and Romney, destroyed a considerable portion of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, and made some important captures, after which he returned to Winchester.

Q. What can you say of the sufferings of the soldiers on this march?

A. The sufferings of the soldiers were exceedingly severe.

Q. What battle occurred on the 19th of January?

A. The battle of Fishing Creek, in Kentucky.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Federals, under the command of General G. H. Thomas, gained a complete victory over the Confederates, commanded by General Felix K. Zollicoffer. General Zollicoffer was killed early in the action.

Q. What other success had the Federals on the 6th of February?

A. They captured Fort Henry, on the Tennessee River, and a small Confederate garrison. The fort surrendered to Commodore Foote.

Q. What still more important victory was gained by the Federals on the 16th of February?

A. General Grant, with an army of thirty thousand men, after a bloody battle, which continued three days, in the midst of snow and ice, captured Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River, and its garrison of nine thousand men, about two thousand having been killed and wounded, and two thousand having escaped.

Q. What other results followed this battle?

A. General Albert Sydney Johnston, who had for months, with a small army, held his ground in Kentucky in the face of overwhelming forces of the Federals, was obliged to retreat from Kentucky, and even to abandon Nashville, in Tennessee, and retire to the borders of Alabama and Mississippi.

Q. Where were the Confederate forces now concentrated?

A. The Confederate forces, under Albert Sydney Johnston and Beauregard, were concentrated at Corinth, Mississippi.

Q. What of the Confederate forces west of the Mississippi?

A. They could not be brought over, because they were themselves hard pressed by the Federals.

Q. Who were in command of the Confederate forces west of the Mississippi?

A. Generals Price and McCulloch.

Q. What battle was fought on the 7th of March?

A. The bloody battle of Elkhorn, or Pea Ridge, in which for two days the Confederates, numbering twenty thousand, held their ground against the Federal army, numbering twenty-five thousand and led by General Curtis.



BATTLE OF PEA RIDGE.

Q. On whose side was the final advantage in this battle?

A. The advantage was finally on the side of the Federals, and the Confederates retired during the night.

Q. What gallant Confederate general was killed in this battle?

A. General McCulloch.

Q. With what success had the Federals met, one month before this, on the coast of North Carolina?

A. General Burnside, assisted by a fleet, had captured Roanoke Island.

Q. Where did the Confederates gain a victory on the 21st of March?

A. At Valverde, in the Territory of New Mexico.

Q. What great battles were fought on the 6th and 7th of April?

A. The battles of Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing.

Q. Give an account of the first day's battle.

A. The Confederates, under the lead of Albert Sydney Johnston and Beauregard, utterly defeated the Federals, under General Grant, capturing between five and six thousand prisoners, an immense amount of army stores, and thirty-six cannon.

Q. What great Confederate general was killed in this battle?

A. General Albert Sydney Johnston.

Q. What happened during the night of the 6th?

A. General Buell came to Grant's assistance with about thirty thousand fresh troops, making the strength of the Federals nearly double that of the Confederates.

Q. Describe the battle which occurred on the 7th.

A. The Federal force, now numbering nearly seventy thousand men, advanced against the Confederates, who on the first day had numbered barely forty thousand. The Confederates, under General Beauregard, held their ground successfully against overwhelming forces from sunrise until afternoon, and then retired, unpursued, in perfect order, to their intrenchments at Corinth, carrying with them most of the spoil of the enemy's camp captured on the day before.

Q. What were the losses of both armies in these two engagements?

A. The losses of the Confederates were over ten thousand in killed, wounded, and missing, while those of the Federals were more than fifteen thousand.

Q. With what success did the Federals meet on the Atlantic coast during the month of April?

A. They captured Fort Pulaski, near Savannah, Georgia, on the 11th of April, and Fort Macon, on the North Carolina coast, on the 25th.

Q. What Confederate fortifications in the Mississippi River were captured by the Federals on the 8th of April?

A. The forts on Island No. 10 were captured by the Federal gunboats and the forces of General Pope. The Confederates here lost six hundred men and seventy cannon.

Q. What still more important success had the Federals on the 25th of April?

A. Admiral Farragut, after an unsuccessful bombardment of the forts which guarded the ascent of the Mississippi, boldly ran past their guns, and appeared before the city of New Orleans, which surrendered. General Butler then brought up his land-forces and took possession.

Q. What happened on the 29th of May?

A. General Beauregard, feeling unable, with his force of only thirty thousand men, to resist the immense army of the Federal General Halleck, numbering more than one hundred thousand, withdrew from Corinth, and fell back to Tupelo, Mississippi.

Q. What was done in consequence of this retreat?

A. Fort Pillow was abandoned on the 4th of June, and Memphis fell into the hands of the Federals, after the destruction of a small Confederate flotilla which defended the city.

Q. What change was soon after made in the command of the Confederate army in Mississippi?

A. General Beauregard's health failing him, he was succeeded by General Braxton Bragg.

Q. While all these important events were occurring in the West and along the coasts, what was being done in Virginia?

A. The Federal forces, under the command of General George B. McClellan, were making efforts to capture Richmond, the capital of the Confederate States.

Q. What was the number of the Federal forces which now advanced from different directions into Virginia?

A. Nearly two hundred thousand in all.

Q. What was the number of the Confederates in Virginia at this time?

A. Not much, if any, over sixty thousand altogether in every part of Virginia.

Q. When McClellan moved towards Manassas with the army under his immediate command, which numbered one hundred and twenty thousand men, what did General Joseph E. Johnston do?

A. Since his own army did not number more than thirty thousand men, he retired behind the river Rapidan.

Q. What happened on the 8th of March, just at the time that McClellan was beginning to advance with his immense army?

A. A Confederate iron-clad vessel, named the Virginia, fell upon the Federal fleet in Hampton Roads, near Norfolk, destroyed the United States war-vessels Cumberland and Congress, and put the Federal fleet to flight.

Q. What happened on the next day?

A. An iron-plated, turreted vessel called the Monitor, which had just arrived from New York, attacked the Virginia, and so damaged her that she was obliged to return to her moorings.

Q. What did McClellan do after the retreat of Johnston from Manassas?

A. He changed his plan, and conveyed his troops by transports down the Chesapeake Bay to Fortress Monroe, intending to advance upon Richmond by the way of the Peninsula.

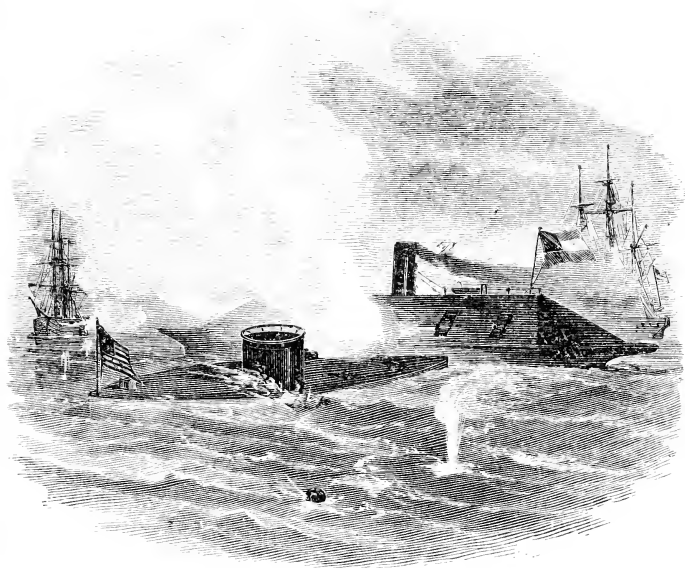
Q. What part of Virginia is called the Peninsula?

A. That part of the State lying between the York and James Rivers.

Q. By whom was the Peninsula at that time defended?

A. By General John B. Magruder, with a Confederate force not exceeding eleven thousand men.

Q. When General Johnston became aware of McClellan's design, what did he do?



MONITOR AND VIRGINIA.

A. He concentrated all his available forces at Yorktown.

Q. What did the Confederates succeed in doing?

A. They succeeded, with a vastly inferior force, in so delaying McClellan's advance that he did not appear before Yorktown until early in May.

Q. What occurred as Johnston retired up the Peninsula towards Richmond?

A. Several encounters between the Confederate rear-guard and the Federal advance.

Q. What was the most important of these encounters?

A. The battle of Williamsburg, on the 5th of May.

Q. How did this battle result?

A. Greatly to the advantage of the Confederates.

Q. What did Johnston continue to do?

A. He continued to retire towards Richmond, and ordered the Confederate troops at Norfolk to evacuate that city and unite with his army in defense of Richmond. Norfolk was accordingly abandoned on the 11th of May.

Q. What battle was fought on the 15th of May?

A. The Federal iron-clad gunboats, led by the monitors *Galena* and *Aroostook*, made a formidable bombardment of the Confederate works at *Drewry's Bluff*, which defended Richmond against approach by the waters of *James River*.

Q. What was the result of the conflict?

A. The Federal fleet was completely repulsed.

Q. What great battle was fought on the 31st of May?

A. The battle of *Seven Pines*, or *Fair Oaks*, in which the Confederates made the attack.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The left wing of the Federal army was defeated with great slaughter, but their right wing held its ground. The Confederates captured ten cannon, six thousand muskets, and a quantity of tents and camp-equipage.

Q. What was the loss of the Federals in this battle?

A. They lost nearly seven thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates?

A. The Confederate loss was four thousand men, killed, wounded, and missing. General *Johnston* was himself so severely wounded that he was obliged to retire from active service for several months.

Q. While these events were going on in the neighborhood of Richmond, what important campaign was being conducted in the Valley of the *Shenandoah*?

A. The brilliant campaign of the great Confederate commander *Stonewall Jackson*, who had been left with a small force to watch the movements of the Federals in that direction.

Q. What was the design of the Federals when *McClellan* landed on the Peninsula and commenced his advance upon Richmond?

A. Their plan of operations was, that while McClellan with one hundred and twenty thousand men moved upon Richmond from the south and east, Fremont should come down from the northwest, Banks from the Valley, and McDowell from Fredericksburg, thus increasing the army of McClellan by more than sixty thousand men.

Q. What was Johnston's design in leaving Jackson in the Valley?

A. Jackson was left in the Valley with the hope that he might be able to impede the progress of the Federals, and at the same time keep them alarmed for the safety of Washington.



STONEWALL JACKSON.

Q. What was Jackson's first move?

A. Feeling the necessity of making some diversion in favor of Johnston, with less than four thousand men he vigorously attacked the Federal army of eleven thousand, commanded by Generals Shields and Banks, at Kernstown, near Winchester.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. Jackson was repulsed, but retired from the field in perfect order, having succeeded in retaining the army of General Banks in the Valley,—the object for which he fought the battle.

Q. When did this battle occur?

A. On the 23d of March, just after McClellan had made his landing on the Peninsula.

Q. After the main body of the Confederate army had been concentrated near Richmond, what did General Johnston do?

A. He sent General Ewell with a division of troops to reinforce Jackson in the Valley.

Q. What did Jackson then do?

A. He moved rapidly up the Valley, and fell upon the advance of Fremont's army at the village of McDowell, on the 8th of

May, completely defeated them, and drove them beyond the mountains.

Q. What did Jackson then do?

A. He marched down the Valley, crushed the left wing of Banks's army at Front Royal on the 23d of May, forced Banks out of Winchester on the 25th of May, and drove him across the Potomac, capturing nearly four thousand prisoners and many cannon.

Q. What important result followed these splendid victories?

A. General McDowell, instead of marching to the assistance of McClellan, sent General Shields against Jackson.

Q. How was Jackson's army now endangered?

A. By the converging armies of Fremont and Shields, who expected to surround and capture his entire force.

Q. Did they succeed?

A. They did not.

Q. Describe Jackson's movements.

A. He skillfully passed between these converging armies before they could unite, his rear-guard under Ewell repulsed Fremont at Cross Keys on the 8th of June, and on the next morning Jackson with his whole force attacked and routed Shields at Port Republic, pursuing him ten miles and taking eight of his cannon.

Q. How large was the Confederate force under Jackson's command which had accomplished these wonderful results?

A. It numbered not more than fifteen thousand.

Q. How many miles had this army marched?

A. Over four hundred in all.

Q. What was the force of the Federals which had thus been defeated by Jackson and prevented from making the desired concentration around Richmond?

A. The Federal forces thus outgeneraled and checked by Jackson amounted to four separate armies, which, had they been united, would have outnumbered his own force almost four to one.

Q. What did Jackson now do?

A. He prepared to co-operate with the main Confederate army in driving McClellan's army down the Peninsula and raising the siege of Richmond.

Q. Who was now in command of the Confederate army in front of Richmond?

A. General Robert E. Lee, who had taken command when General Johnston was wounded at Seven Pines.

Q. What did Lee do for the purpose of leading the Federals to believe that Jackson intended to move upon Winchester, and from thence upon Washington?

A. He sent to Jackson, in the Valley, the divisions of Generals Whiting and Lawton.

Q. What did Jackson then do?

A. While the Federal generals in the Valley were expecting an attack, Jackson quietly slipped away, and on the evening of the 26th of June appeared on the rear of the right flank of McClellan's army, while Lee with the main Confederate army was ready to fall upon the Federal front.

Q. What now occurred?

A. A series of bloody battles, continuing during six days.

Q. Mention these battles in their order.

A. Mechanicsville and Beaver Dam Creek on the 26th of June, Gaines's Mills, or Cold Harbor, on the 27th, Savage Station on the 29th, Frazer's Farm and White Oak Swamp on the 30th, and Malvern Hill on the 1st of July.

Q. What was the result of these conflicts?

A. The result was a complete Confederate triumph.

Q. What was the loss on each side?

A. The loss on each side was about twenty thousand in killed and wounded; but the Confederates captured more than ten thousand prisoners, fifty-two cannon, thirty thousand stand of small arms, and an immense amount of army stores.

Q. To what place did the Federal army retreat?

A. To Harrison's Landing, on the James River, where they found refuge under the protection of their gunboats.

Q. How far had they been driven in the series of battles which we have mentioned?

A. They had been driven a distance of thirty miles.

Q. What was the comparative strength of the two armies when the battles around Richmond commenced?

A. The Confederates numbered something more than seventy thousand, while the Federals numbered more than one hundred and ten thousand.

Q. What was now done by President Lincoln?

A. He called for three hundred thousand more men.

Q. While these great victories were being won by the Confederates in Virginia in rapid succession, what occurred near Charleston, South Carolina?

A. The Federal General H. G. Wright led a force of six thousand men against a small Confederate force near the village of Secessionville, on James Island, but was repulsed with terrible slaughter.

Q. After McClellan's disastrous repulse from before Richmond, what was done by the Federal authorities at Washington?

A. The armies that had been defeated by General Jackson in the Valley were united with McDowell's forces, and placed under the command of Major-General John Pope.

Q. What was McClellan ordered to do?

A. He was ordered to send his forces around by Aquia Creek, to unite with the forces under General Pope.

Q. What was General Pope's plan?

A. His plan was to move upon Richmond from the north.

Q. When General Lee heard of these movements, what did he do?

A. He sent Stonewall Jackson to watch the movements of the new Federal commander.

Q. When did Jackson encounter the advance of Pope's army, led by General Banks?

A. On the 9th of August, at Cedar Run.

Q. What then occurred?

A. Another desperate battle, in which Jackson was again victorious.

Q. What did Lee now do?

A. He moved to the northward with the whole Confederate army, and united his forces with Jackson's, who had already got into the rear of the Federals and had been fighting against great odds.

Q. What now occurred?

A. Another great battle was fought on the plains of Manassas, where the first great battle of the war had been fought the year before.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. General Pope, the Federal commander, was completely defeated, and driven to his fortifications near Washington.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates in this battle?

A. Their total loss was seven thousand men.

Q. What was the Federal loss?

A. The Federal loss was not less than thirty thousand men, including eight generals and nine thousand prisoners, besides thirty cannon and thirty thousand stand of small arms.

Q. What was now done by the Federal Government?

A. McClellan was again put in command of all the Federal forces in and around Washington.

Q. What did Lee do soon after his great victory at the second battle of Manassas?

A. He crossed the Potomac into Maryland, and advanced as far as Frederick.

Q. As it was necessary to open the line of communication through the Valley, what did Lee do?

A. He detached Jackson's corps against Harper's Ferry, which was held by about twelve thousand Federal troops.



GENERAL McCLELLAN.

Q. What did McClellan do when he ascertained the movements of the Confederates?

A. He hastened with his whole army to the relief of Harper's Ferry.

Q. What did Lee now find it necessary to do?

A. He found it necessary to defend the passage through the South Mountains, in order to insure the safety of the Confederate troops besieging Harper's Ferry.

Q. Who was sent to oppose the passage of the Federals at Boonsboro' Gap, in the South Mountain?

A. General D. H. Hill, and Longstreet was afterwards sent to support him.

Q. What conflict now took place?

A. McClellan's army made desperate efforts to break through the Gap, but the Confederates repulsed every attempt, until darkness closed the fight.

Q. When was this?

A. This was on the 14th of September.

Q. What had happened meanwhile at Crampton's Gap?

A. General Howell Cobb, with a small Confederate force, held his ground for five hours against overwhelming numbers of the Federals, but finally was forced to yield the unequal contest and withdraw.

Q. What did Lee now do?

A. Having gained the necessary time for his Harper's Ferry operations, he began to concentrate his army near the village of Sharpsburg.

Q. What happened on the morning of the 15th of September?

A. Harper's Ferry was surrendered to General Jackson, with its garrison of nearly twelve thousand men, besides seventy-three cannon and thirteen thousand stand of small arms.

Q. What great battle occurred on the 17th of September?

A. The battle of Sharpsburg, or, as it is sometimes called, Antietam.

Q. Describe this battle.

A. Lee with less than forty thousand Confederates held his ground against nearly ninety thousand Federals, led by General McClellan, repulsing every assault with the most consummate skill.

Q. What was done during the 18th?

A. The two armies remained facing each other, but neither renewed the battle.

Q. What did Lee do during the night of the 18th?

A. Having ascertained that McClellan was being heavily reinforced, he retired across the Potomac into Virginia.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in this battle?

A. The Federal loss was twelve thousand men, that of the Confederates ten thousand.

Q. What did McClellan do on the night of the 19th?

A. He sent forward Porter's corps of fresh troops across the Potomac in pursuit of Lee.

Q. What did Lee do when he heard of this?

A. He ordered General A. P. Hill with his division to drive Porter's force into the river.

Q. What was the result?

A. On the morning of the 20th, Hill's division attacked Porter's troops near Shepherdstown, and drove the Federals into the Potomac with terrible slaughter.

Q. Was any other attempt made to molest Lee's army?

A. No other attempt was made to follow Lee.

Q. Where did the Confederate army go into camp to recuperate and rest?

A. Near Winchester, Virginia.

Q. Where did the Federal army remain?

A. On the north of the Potomac, not feeling able at this time to renew the campaign against Lee.

Q. What had the Confederate army accomplished since the 25th of June?

A. It had marched over three hundred miles on half-rations and poorly clad, had vanquished three powerful armies in twelve

battles and numerous skirmishes, had inflicted on the Federals a loss of nearly seventy-six thousand men, and had captured one hundred and fifty-five cannon and nearly seventy thousand stand of small arms, besides military stores to the amount of millions of dollars.

Q. While Lee's army was resting near Winchester, what great feat was accomplished by General Stuart, the Confederate cavalry leader?

A. On the 9th of October, General Stuart set out with about eighteen hundred cavalry, crossed the Potomac above Williamsport, pushed on to Chambersburg, in Pennsylvania, where he destroyed a large amount of supplies, and, passing entirely around McClellan's army, recrossed into Virginia below Harper's Ferry.

Q. While the Confederates were thus gaining great victories in Virginia, what attempt was made by their armies in the West?

A. They attempted to recover Tennessee and Kentucky.

Q. To accomplish this purpose, what was first done?

A. Colonel Morgan with a cavalry force made an incursion into Kentucky, for the purpose of operating on the communications of the Federal army in Northern Mississippi, while Colonel Forrest with his cavalry operated upon the communications of the Federal army in Tennessee.

Q. Describe Morgan's operations.

A. He moved into Kentucky, captured Lebanon and Cynthiana, with twelve hundred prisoners, re-entered Tennessee, and captured Clarksville, with a large amount of military stores.

Q. Give an account of Forrest's movements.

A. Early in July he crossed the Tennessee at Chattanooga, captured McMinnville, and surprised and captured the garrison of Murfreesboro', consisting of nearly two thousand men, including Generals Duffield and Crittenden.

Q. By what were these cavalry movements soon followed?

A. By the advance of the main Confederate army of fifty thousand men, under General Bragg, northward from Chattanooga, and of General Kirby Smith's division of seven thousand men from Knoxville into Kentucky.

Q. What victory was gained by Kirby Smith on the 30th of August, the same day that Lee gained his great victory at the second battle of Manassas?

A. The victory at Richmond, Kentucky, on which occasion Smith attacked about ten thousand Federal troops commanded by Generals Nelson and Manson, and completely routed them.

Q. What was the Federal loss in this battle?

A. Their loss was one thousand men killed and wounded and five thousand taken prisoners, besides nine cannon and ten thousand stand of small arms.

Q. What did Smith now do?

A. He entered Lexington, Kentucky, and, moving northward, alarmed the Federals for the safety of Cincinnati.

Q. When did General Bragg enter Kentucky?

A. On the 5th of September.

Q. What place did he capture on the 17th?

A. Munfordsville, with its garrison of four thousand men, several cannon, and about four thousand stand of small arms.

Q. What did Bragg now do?

A. He moved forward and entered Frankfort, the capital of Kentucky, where he inaugurated a Provisional Governor.

Q. What happened a few days after this?

A. General Buell, who had been obliged to retreat from Tennessee to Louisville, Kentucky, had now received heavy reinforcements, and began to advance upon Bragg.

Q. What assistance had Bragg expected to receive?

A. He had expected General Van Dorn to defeat the Federals in Mississippi and advance into Kentucky.

Q. Did he receive the expected assistance?

A. He did not.

Q. Why?

A. Because Van Dorn failed to carry out his part of the proposed plan.

Q. What battle took place in Northern Mississippi on the 19th of September, two days after Bragg's success at Munfordsville?

A. The battle of Iuka, in which General Price repulsed the attack of a much larger Federal force, led by General Rosecrans, capturing some of their cannon, but on the approach of fresh Federal troops was obliged to retreat, abandoning the captured guns.

Q. What battle was fought by Generals Van Dorn and Price on the 4th of October?

A. With a force of nearly thirty thousand men they attacked the Federals under Rosecrans, numbering twenty thousand, in their strongly-fortified position at Corinth, but were repulsed with the loss of about five thousand men.

Q. When Bragg found that he could not receive the hoped-for assistance from Van Dorn, what did he do?

A. He prepared to retire from Kentucky into Tennessee.

Q. As Buell advanced upon him very rapidly, what did he find it necessary to do?

A. To fight a battle to cover his retreat and to enable him to secure the rich spoils which he had captured in Kentucky.

Q. Describe the battle.

A. Bragg's army, though greatly outnumbered, not only repulsed the Federals, but forced them back about two miles, capturing fifteen cannon, and inflicting on the Federals a loss of four thousand men, while the loss of the Confederates was only twenty-five hundred.

Q. What did this battle accomplish?

A. It secured Bragg's retreat from Kentucky without molestation by the Federals, and enabled him to carry away with him the great supplies of every description which he had captured and which his army so much needed.

Q. Had Bragg's Kentucky campaign been a success?

A. Only partially so.

Q. In what had he failed?

A. He had failed to recover Kentucky, and to force all the Federal armies back to the Ohio River.

Q. In what had he succeeded?

A. He had succeeded in forcing back General Buell, who had been threatening Chattanooga, in Tennessee, and even Atlanta, in Georgia; he had recovered a large part of Middle Tennessee, and by getting possession of Cumberland Gap he had secured the possession of East Tennessee.

Q. When did the Federal army again cross the Potomac into Virginia?

A. On the 2d of November.

Q. Who now succeeded General McClellan in command of the Federal army of the Potomac?

A. General Ambrose E. Burnside.

Q. What did this new general do?

A. He commenced a march upon Richmond by the way of Fredericksburg.

Q. What did he hope to do?

A. He hoped to reach Fredericksburg before Lee's army could get there, but when he reached there he found Lee ready to oppose his advance.

Q. What battle took place between these two armies on the 13th of December?

A. The battle of Fredericksburg.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Federal army, numbering one hundred and twenty thousand men, assaulted Lee's army of fifty thousand, but met with a terrible repulse, losing more than thirteen thousand men, while the Confederate loss was about four thousand.

Q. What did this victory secure to the Confederate army of Virginia?

A. It secured to them a period of rest from the attacks of the Federals.



GENERAL BRAGG.

Q. What attempt was made by the Federals along the Atlantic coast, between the cities of Charleston and Savannah, during the month of October?

A. They made an attempt to seize the Charleston and Savannah Railroad, but were defeated with considerable loss at Pocotaligo, on the 22d of October.

Q. What did the Federals attempt in Mississippi?

A. They attempted to capture Vicksburg.

Q. What was their plan?

A. General Grant was to move down to Jackson and then advance upon Vicksburg, while Sherman should move upon the city by way of the Yazoo River, assisted by Commodore Porter's gunboats.

Q. How was Grant prevented from performing his part of the programme?

A. General Van Dorn, commanding a force of Confederate cavalry, captured Holly Springs and destroyed Grant's depot of supplies, and thus forced Grant to retreat.

Q. How many prisoners were captured by Van Dorn at Holly Springs?

A. Nearly two thousand.

Q. Where did Sherman encounter the Confederates?

A. He encountered the Confederates, under Pemberton, at Chickasaw Bayou, to the north of Vicksburg, on the 29th of December.

Q. What was the result of the battle which now took place?

A. The Federals were repulsed, with the loss of two thousand men, while the total Confederate loss was only two hundred and seven.

Q. Where was the last battle of the year 1862 fought?

A. Near Murfreesboro', Tennessee, from which place the battle takes its name, although it is also called the battle of Stone River.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Confederate army, under General Bragg, numbering

thirty-five thousand men, on the 31st of December, attacked the Federal army of forty-seven thousand men, under General Rosecrans, and drove back their right wing in utter confusion, capturing four thousand prisoners and thirty-one cannon, but failed to carry the position occupied by the left wing of the Federal army.

Q. When was the battle renewed?

A. On the 2d of January there was an engagement between portions of the two armies, in which neither party gained any decisive advantage.

Q. What information did General Bragg receive on the 3d of January?

A. He received information from General Wheeler, in command of the cavalry, that the Federals were being reinforced from Nashville.

Q. What did he deem it best to do?

A. To move his army back in the direction of Tullahoma and Shelbyville, which he did, carrying off all the spoil which he had captured.

Q. When Rosecrans set out from Nashville, what had he expected to do?

A. He had expected to crush Bragg's army and then march unopposed to Chattanooga.

Q. How had Bragg foiled him?

A. He had with a smaller army attacked him, and so crippled his army that it was unable to renew the campaign for months.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in the battle of Murfreesboro'?

A. The Federal army lost more than fourteen thousand men, while the loss of the Confederates was fully ten thousand.

Q. What success had the Confederates on the sea during the summer and fall of this year?

A. Their navy, particularly the two new war-vessels, the Florida and the Alabama, did immense damage to the Federal commerce.

Q. What had been the general result of the military operations of 1862?

A. In the beginning of the year the prospect had been gloomy for the Confederates; the Federals had overrun and occupied large portions of their territory; but the year closed with the Southern troops triumphant on almost every field, and with the Federals completely defeated in most places and checked in others.



SEAL OF WEST VIRGINIA.

Q. What important political event happened at the close of this year?

A. Forty-eight counties of Western and Northern Virginia, the people of which sided with the Federals and had formed a provisional government for those counties, were admitted into the Federal Union as a separate State on the 31st of December.

CHAPTER IV.

Third Year of the War between the States.

Q. WHAT proclamation was issued by President Lincoln on the 1st of January, 1863?

A. He issued a proclamation emancipating the slaves in all the States that had seceded from the Union.

Q. Was this measure in accordance with the Constitution, which the Northern States were professing to maintain?

A. It was not.

Q. On what plea was it justified?

A. On the plea of military necessity.

Q. What did Mr. Lincoln expect to accomplish by this proclamation?

A. He expected to weaken the power of the Confederate (or Southern) States, by holding out to the negroes the promise of freedom, and thus causing them to become the enemies of their masters.

Q. How many slaves were there in the limits of the Confederate States?

A. There were about three millions.

Q. What was the white population of the Confederate States?

A. There were not more than five million white inhabitants in the Confederate States.

Q. What was the population of the States which remained in the Union and were now engaged in the war against the Southern States?

A. Their population was twenty-three millions, of whom more than twenty-two millions were whites.

Q. What advantage did this great preponderance of population give to the Northern States?

A. It enabled them to put into the field armies vastly larger than those that could be mustered by the Southern States.

Q. What other great advantage had those States which adhered to the Federal Government?

A. They had possession of the whole navy, which had been the common property of all the States before the secession of the Southern States.

Q. What did this enable them to do?

A. It enabled them to blockade the ports of the Confederate States, while their own ports were open and free to the commerce of the world.

Q. What was the comparative size of the armies at the beginning of the year 1863?

A. The Federal armies were larger than they were the previous year, while the Confederate armies were smaller.

Q. How did the Federals recruit their armies?

A. They not only kept up the strength of their armies by enlisting great numbers in the Northern States, but they also received thousands of recruits from Europe.

Q. What was the condition of the Confederate States?

A. Their ports were blockaded, so that they could get neither troops nor supplies from abroad, and were obliged to depend upon their own limited resources.

Q. What can you say of the prospects of the Confederate States at the beginning of the year 1863?

A. Their prospects were encouraging.

Q. Had the relative strength of the Federal and Confederate armies remained the same as during the summer and fall of 1862, what would the year 1863 have probably secured?

A. It would probably have secured the triumph of the Southern cause.

Q. With what brilliant success did the Confederates meet on the 1st of January, 1863?

A. General John B. Magruder, by a night-attack on the Federal fleet and garrison, recaptured Galveston, Texas, destroyed the

Federal ship *Westfield*, captured another vessel, the *Harriet Lane*, drove off the rest of the Federal fleet, and raised the blockade on that part of the coast.

Q. What victory was gained by the Federals on the 11th of January?

A. General John A. McClelland, with about thirty thousand men, assisted by Admiral Porter's fleet, captured Arkansas Post, on the Arkansas River, and its garrison of five thousand men, besides seventeen cannon, three thousand stand of small arms, and a great quantity of munitions and commissary stores.

Q. What can you say of the gallantry of the Confederates in this battle?

A. The Confederate force of five thousand (of whom two thousand were sick or disabled) resisted the overwhelming numbers of the Federals for five hours, and inflicted on them a loss of nearly one thousand men before they succeeded in entering the fort.

Q. Who was the Confederate commander in this battle?

A. General T. J. Churchill.

Q. What else can you say of this battle?

A. It was a complete victory for the Federals, and yet a battle of which the Confederate commander and his brave soldiers had every reason to be proud.

Q. What naval victory was gained on the sea by the Confederates near Galveston, Texas, on the afternoon of the 11th of January?

A. The Confederate war-steamer *Alabama*, commanded by Commodore Semmes, attacked and captured the Federal war-steamer *Hatteras* and her crew of one hundred and eighteen men.

Q. What happened in ten minutes after the captured crew of the *Hatteras* had been transferred to the deck of the *Alabama*?

A. The *Hatteras*, which had been greatly injured in the fight, went down, and was thus lost to her captors.

Q. What other brilliant success was gained by the Confederates at Sabine Pass, on the 21st of January?

A. Major O. M. Watkins, with two Confederate gunboats, chased out to sea and captured a Federal gunboat and a schooner, with thirteen cannon, one hundred and twenty-nine prisoners, and one million dollars' worth of stores.

Q. Where did the Confederates gain an important naval victory on the 31st of January?

A. In the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina.

Q. Give an account of this Confederate naval victory.

A. The Confederate naval force in the harbor of Charleston attacked the Federal blockading fleet, and dispersed and drove out of sight for the time the entire Federal fleet.

Q. Who commanded the Confederate naval force in this battle?

A. Captain D. N. Ingraham.

Q. What occurred on the 27th of February, near Savannah, Georgia?

A. Four Federal iron-clad gunboats, under Commander Worden, attacked the Confederate steamer Nashville, that had got aground near Fort McAllister, and succeeded in setting her on fire and destroying her.

Q. What occurred on March 3d?

A. Five Federal iron-clad gunboats and three mortar-schooners, commanded by Commodore Dupont, attacked Fort McAllister, but were repulsed.

Q. What brilliant victory was gained by the Confederates in Middle Tennessee on the 5th of March?

A. General Van Dorn, with a large cavalry force, attacked the Federals under Colonel Coburn, at Spring Hill, and captured the whole force of thirteen hundred men, seven hundred having been killed and wounded.

Q. Where did the Federal fleet meet with another repulse on the 6th of April?

A. In Charleston harbor.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Federal fleet, consisting of nine iron-clads and five other gunboats, commanded by Commodore Dupont, assailed Fort Sum-

ter, but were repulsed, after having several of their vessels damaged and one of them (the Keokuk) sunk.

Q. What other brilliant victory was gained near Rome, Georgia, about the last of April?

A. Colonel Streight, who, at the head of nearly two thousand Federal cavalry, had been sent on a raid to destroy the machine-shops of Rome and Atlanta, was defeated by General Forrest, and compelled to surrender his entire command.

Q. While all these important events which have been mentioned were occurring in the West and on the Atlantic coast, what were the Federals doing in Virginia?

A. They were preparing to make another advance against Lee's army.

Q. Who was now in command of the Federal army in Virginia?

A. General Joseph Hooker.

Q. How large was the army with which General Hooker now advanced against the Confederates?

A. It numbered one hundred and thirty-two thousand men.

Q. What did Lee's army number at this time?

A. It numbered only forty-seven thousand men, Longstreet being absent with the greater part of his corps in Southeastern Virginia.

Q. When did Hooker's army cross the Rappahannock?

A. On the 29th and 30th of April.

Q. What boast was made by General Hooker?

A. That Lee would be obliged either to fly or fight a battle, in which his army would certainly be destroyed.

Q. Instead of retreating, what did General Lee do?



GENERAL HOOKER.

A. He advanced boldly with his comparatively small army to attack the Federals.

Q. When did the fighting between the two armies commence?

A. On the afternoon of the 2d of May, when Stonewall Jackson attacked and routed the right wing of the Federal army in the Wilderness.

Q. What happened on the 3d of May?

A. On the 3d of May Hooker's main force was attacked and driven back at Chancellorsville.

Q. What happened on the 4th?

A. The Federal General Sedgwick, who was advancing to attack Lee's army in the rear, was overwhelmed at Salem Church and driven back in confusion.

Q. What did General Hooker do on the night of the 5th of May?

A. He retreated across the Rappahannock, leaving behind seventeen thousand men, killed, wounded, and prisoners, fourteen cannon, and thirty thousand stand of small arms.

Q. What was the Confederate loss in these battles?

A. Their loss was ten thousand men.

Q. What great Confederate general was mortally wounded during this terrible conflict?

A. The illustrious Stonewall Jackson, who received his death-wound on the evening of the 2d of May.

Q. What is this terrible three days' conflict called?

A. It is called the battle of Chancellorsville.

Q. How long did both armies remain quiet after this battle?

A. Until near the middle of June.

Q. In the mean while, what efforts were being made by the Federals along the Mississippi River?

A. They were making vigorous efforts to capture Vicksburg and Port Hudson, which commanded the navigation of the Mississippi.

Q. By whom was the Federal army operating against Vicksburg commanded?

A. By General Ulysses S. Grant.

Q. What did General Grant do during the months of February and March?

A. He made many attempts to approach Vicksburg,—first by Williams's Canal, next by Lake Providence, then by Yazoo Pass, then by Steele's Bayou, then by Milliken's Bend and New Carthage Cut-off.

Q. What was the result of these attempts?

A. He failed in them all.

Q. Did his failures discourage him?

A. They did not: he was only the more determined to succeed.

Q. After meeting with so many failures, what bold plan did he finally adopt?

A. He adopted the plan of sending his army down the west bank of the Mississippi to Grand Gulf, and running his transports past the Vicksburg batteries down to the same point.

Q. What was his design in doing this?

A. His intention was to cross the Mississippi at Grand Gulf, and, marching up from that point, attack Vicksburg in the rear.

Q. Did he succeed in this?

A. He did.

Q. What now happened?

A. General Grant now began his march upon Vicksburg, defeating the forces of Pemberton at Raymond on the 12th of May; at Baker's Creek, or Champion Hill, on the 16th of May; and at the Big Black on the 17th of May.



NAVIGATION IN THE MISSISSIPPI BAYOUS.

Q. What did Pemberton do after these defeats?

A. He retired into Vicksburg, where he was closely besieged by the Federal army.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates in these battles?

A. Their loss was about six thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, besides thirty-three cannon and a large number of small arms.

Q. How large was the army of Pemberton that was now besieged in Vicksburg?

A. It numbered nearly thirty thousand men, of whom at least one-third were sick and disabled.

Q. What was the number of the Federal troops that were now besieging Vicksburg?

A. The entire Federal force, both on land and water, engaged in the siege of Vicksburg, numbered more than one hundred and forty thousand men.

Q. What was done on the 19th of May?

A. The Federals assaulted the Confederates in the fortifications, but were repulsed.

Q. When was a more general and determined assault made?

A. On the 22d of May.

Q. What was the result of this assault?

A. The Federals were again repulsed, with terrible slaughter.

Q. What was their loss in these two assaults?

A. About four thousand men.

Q. What did Grant now determine to do?

A. He determined to keep Pemberton's army hemmed in in Vicksburg by his superior forces until the Confederates should be starved into a surrender.

Q. What had the Federal General Banks done in the mean while?

A. He had moved up from New Orleans with about fifteen thousand men, and was closely besieging Port Hudson.

Q. By how large a force was Port Hudson defended?

A. By six thousand Confederates, under General Gardner.



VIEW OF NEW ORLEANS—LAKE PONTCHARTRAIN IN THE DISTANCE.

Q. What did General Banks do on the 27th of May?

A. He assaulted the Confederate position with all his force.

Q. With what result?

A. He met with a disastrous repulse, losing two thousand of his men, while the Confederates did not lose three hundred in all.

Q. When did General Banks again attempt to carry the Confederate works?

A. On the 10th and 14th of June.

Q. With what result?

A. He was repulsed each time.

Q. What brilliant victory was gained by the Confederate General Dick Taylor on the 22d of June?

A. He captured Brashear City, Louisiana, with one thousand prisoners, a strong fort, ten large cannon, and supplies valued at nearly six million dollars.

Q. What efforts were now made by the Confederate Government?

A. Efforts were made to assemble an army for the relief of Vicksburg, by sending a large portion of General Bragg's army to Mississippi.

Q. Under whose command was this army?

M*

A. It was commanded by General Joseph E. Johnston.

Q. What was the effect of this transfer of troops from Tennessee to Mississippi?

A. The effect was that Bragg's position in Tennessee was weakened, while the force sent to Mississippi was not strong enough to accomplish the purpose for which it was designed.

Q. While the Federal armies were thus besieging Vicksburg and Port Hudson, on the Mississippi, what was the Confederate army under Lee doing in Virginia?

A. It was preparing for an invasion of Pennsylvania.

Q. What was the design of the Confederate Government in invading Pennsylvania?

A. The design of the Confederate Government was to free Virginia of the presence of hostile troops, and to break up the entire Federal plan of campaign for the summer, both in the East and in the West.

Q. What was the size of the army with which Lee set out for the invasion of Pennsylvania?

A. It numbered eighty thousand men.

Q. When did General Lee commence the movement which was designed to flank General Hooker's army out of its position?

A. On the 3d of June.

Q. What occurred on the 9th of June, after the Federals had discovered that Lee's army was making a movement of some sort?

A. A large force of Federal cavalry under Generals Gregg and Buford, strongly supported by infantry, crossed the Rappahannock and attacked General Stuart at Fleetwood, near Brandy Station.

Q. What was the result?

A. After a severe engagement, lasting from early in the morning until late in the afternoon, the Federals were driven back across the river, losing heavily in killed and wounded, and leaving four hundred prisoners and three cannon in the hands of the Confederates.

Q. What two victories were gained by the Confederates on the 14th of June?

A. On the 14th of June, General Early, of Ewell's corps, stormed and carried the Federal works at Winchester, while General Rodes on the same day captured Martinsburg.

Q. What were the fruits of these two victories?

A. More than four thousand prisoners, twenty-nine cannon, two hundred and seventy wagons and ambulances, with four hundred horses, besides a large amount of military stores, fell into the hands of the Confederates.

Q. When did General Ewell, with the advance of Lee's army, cross the Potomac?

A. On the 23d of June.

Q. When did the Confederate army enter Chambersburg, Pennsylvania?

A. On the 27th of June.

Q. How far into Pennsylvania did portions of the Confederate army penetrate?

A. Some divisions of the Confederate army advanced to York and Carlisle, which they entered, and were advancing on Harrisburg, when they received orders to join the main army, near Gettysburg.

Q. What had General Hooker's army been compelled to do by these movements of Lee?

A. It had been compelled to retire from Virginia and hasten to the defense of Pennsylvania.

Q. What did General Hooker do soon after the return of the Federal army to Maryland?

A. He requested to be relieved of the command of the Federal army.

Q. Who was appointed in his place?

A. General George G. Meade.

Q. How large was the army under Meade which was now moving forward to oppose the advance of Lee?

A. It numbered one hundred thousand men, having been heavily reinforced since leaving Virginia.

Q. Where did the opposing armies encounter each other?

A. At Gettysburg.

Q. What now ensued?

A. Three desperate battles, all known by the general name of the battle of Gettysburg.

Q. On what day was the first of these battles fought?

A. On the 1st of July.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. The Confederates, under Generals Hill and Ewell, attacked the Federals, led by Generals Reynolds and Howard, and drove them through Gettysburg, inflicting upon them the loss of five thousand in killed and wounded, besides capturing five thousand prisoners and sixteen cannon.

Q. What happened during the night of the 1st?

A. The Federal army was concentrated on a high range of hills south and east of the town, and opposite the position which the Confederates had so gallantly carried on the afternoon of the 1st.

Q. What happened on the 2d of July?

A. Another desperate battle, in which the corps of General Longstreet, on the right of Lee's army, succeeded in piercing the Federal lines and retaining its position within them, while General Ewell also succeeded in carrying some of the strong positions which he assailed.

Q. What had the Confederates now reason to hope?

A. That on the next day they should gain the crowning victory of the campaign.

Q. How was the morning of the 3d of July spent?

A. It was spent by the Confederates in preparing for a grand assault, and by the Federals in strengthening their position.

Q. When did the final battle around Gettysburg commence?

A. On the afternoon of the 3d of July.

Q. What was the result?



GENERAL MEADE.

A. The Confederates succeeded in entering the advanced works of the Federals and getting possession of some of their batteries, but, after a gallant struggle, were forced to fall back, with severe loss, to the position from which they had made the assault.

Q. What was the condition of the two armies at the close of this battle?

A. The Confederate army had suffered too severely to renew the attack, but was well able to meet any attack that might be made; while the Federal army, which had but barely held its own, was not able to assault Lee's position.

Q. Why could not Lee remain longer in Pennsylvania?

A. Because he could not procure supplies, and there was danger that a force might be sent which would interrupt his communications, or perhaps cut his army off from the fords of the Potomac.

Q. How long did Lee remain at Gettysburg after the battle of the 3d?

A. He remained until the night of the 4th, waiting to see if the Federals would attack his position, and feeling perfectly able to repulse any assault.

Q. As the Federals did not attack, how did the Confederates employ their time during the 4th?

A. They busied themselves in burying their dead and in moving such of their wounded as were in a condition to be moved.

Q. When did the Confederate army begin to retire from Gettysburg?

A. On the night of the 4th; but the rear of the column did not leave its position near Gettysburg until after daylight on the 5th.

Q. Did the Federal army interrupt the Confederates as they retired from Gettysburg?

A. It did not.

Q. What happened at Williamsport on the 6th of July?

A. The Confederate wagon and ambulance train, which had been sent to Williamsport ahead of the army, under the escort of General Imboden, was attacked by Federal cavalry.

Q. What was the result of the fight which occurred?

A. The Federals were repulsed, and soon after were themselves attacked by General Stuart and pursued for several miles.

Q. When the main Confederate army reached the Potomac, on the 7th of July, and found the river so much swollen by the rains that the trains with the wounded and prisoners could not be got across, what did Lee do?

A. He took up a position covering the Potomac from Williamsport to Falling Waters, where he waited for the subsiding of the river and the construction of bridges.

Q. When General Meade with his army appeared before Lee's position, on the 12th of July, what did he do?

A. Instead of attacking the Confederates, he commenced fortifying his own lines, as if dreading an attack from them.

Q. When did Lee's army retire across the river into Virginia?

A. On the night of the 13th.

Q. Were they molested by the Federals?

A. They were not.

Q. What were the losses of the Confederates in the Pennsylvania campaign?

A. Their losses were about eighteen thousand in killed and wounded, and about ten thousand unwounded prisoners, the greater part of this loss being inflicted upon them in the battles around Gettysburg.

Q. What was the loss of the Federals?

A. Their losses during the campaign were about equal to those of the Confederates, amounting to more than twenty-three thousand at Gettysburg, and being more than five thousand at Winchester and Martinsburg.

Q. Of this number how many were unwounded prisoners?

A. Of this number there were ten thousand unwounded prisoners, nearly six thousand being captured at Gettysburg and more than four thousand at Winchester and Martinsburg.

Q. What were the respective losses of the Federals and Confederates in artillery during this campaign?

A. The Federals lost three cannon at Fleetwood, twenty-nine at Winchester and Martinsburg, and sixteen in the first battle at Gettysburg, while the Confederates lost but three cannon in the whole campaign.

Q. What more can you say of this campaign?

A. Until the 3d of July the advantage was decidedly on the side of the Confederates; but their repulse on the afternoon of the 3d forced them to abandon the invasion of Pennsylvania and return to their former position on the Rappahannock, in Virginia.

Q. Why should this one repulse bring the invasion of Pennsylvania to an end?

A. Because the Federal army was being largely reinforced, while the Confederates had no reserved troops with which they could reinforce Lee.

Q. In the mean while, what great disaster befell the Confederate arms in the West?

A. Vicksburg, after a long and gallant defense, was surrendered to General Grant on the 4th of July, with two hundred cannon and twenty-seven thousand prisoners.

Q. What other disaster befell the Confederates on the 9th of July?

A. Port Hudson, which had been bravely defended to the last, was compelled to surrender to General Banks, with seventy-three cannon and six thousand prisoners.

Q. What important victory was gained by the Confederates on the 18th of July?

A. The battle of Fort Wagner, on Morris Island, near Charleston, South Carolina, in which the Federal forces, led by General Strong, were defeated, with a loss of fifteen hundred men, while the Confederate loss was less than one hundred.

Q. What great cavalry raid was conducted by General John H. Morgan during the month of July?

A. He moved with about two thousand men across the southern portions of Indiana and Ohio, doing great damage to the Federals and causing great consternation; but his command was at

last attacked by superior numbers and the greater portion of it captured, Morgan himself being among the prisoners, but he afterwards escaped.

Q. Turning to Middle Tennessee, what do we find to be the state of affairs at this time?

A. We find that General Bragg, whose army had been very much weakened by the transfer of troops to Mississippi, was obliged to fall back before the advance of the powerful army of Rosecrans.

Q. What was the state of affairs at the same time in East Tennessee?

A. The small Confederate force in that region was compelled to retire before the advance of General Burnside's army.

Q. Before Bragg could be reinforced, in what condition did he find himself?

A. He found that he must either abandon Chattanooga to the Federals or run the risk of having his army hemmed in and besieged, as Pemberton's had been at Vicksburg.

Q. What did he determine to do?

A. He determined to abandon Chattanooga, and avoid every risk of endangering the safety of his army.

Q. Soon after retiring from Chattanooga, how was Bragg's army strengthened?

A. By five brigades from Lee's army, under the command of General Longstreet, one of the ablest of Lee's generals.

Q. What did Bragg now do?

A. He no longer retired before the Federals, but moved forward to attack them.

Q. What was the comparative strength of the two armies?

A. The Federal army numbered fifty-five thousand men, and the Confederate army nearly fifty thousand.

Q. Where did these two armies encounter each other?

A. At Chickamauga Creek, on the extreme northern border of Georgia.

Q. What was the result of the battle which occurred?

A. It resulted in one of the most brilliant Confederate victories

of the war, the Federals being routed, with the loss of twenty thousand men (of whom eight thousand were prisoners), besides fifty-one cannon and fifteen thousand small arms.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates?

A. About fifteen thousand men, killed and wounded.

Q. To what place did the Federal army retreat?

A. To Chattanooga, on the Tennessee River.

Q. What did the Confederate army now do?

A. It followed and prepared to besiege the Federal army in Chattanooga.

Q. Where had the Confederates gained a brilliant success twelve days before the battle of Chickamauga?

A. At Sabine Pass, on the coast of Texas, where a small Confederate fort manned by two hundred and fifty men, under the command of Captain Odum, repulsed a Federal force consisting of an army of four thousand men and a fleet of four gunboats.

Q. How did it happen that so small a force of Confederates repulsed so large a Federal force?

A. It happened through the bad management of the Federal commander, General Franklin, who failed to co-operate with the fleet, and thus prevented his four thousand men from being of any more service than if they had been a thousand miles away.

Q. What was the Federal loss in this affair?

A. The Federals lost two gunboats, which were captured by the Confederates, together with fifteen heavy rifled cannon, besides fifty killed and wounded and two hundred prisoners.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates?

A. They did not lose a single man.

Q. While General Bragg, after the battle of Chickamauga, was keeping the Federal army hemmed in in Chattanooga, what was General Longstreet ordered to do?

A. He was ordered to move with his corps against General Burnside, in East Tennessee.

Q. Describe the movements of Longstreet.

A. He advanced to the northward, defeating a Federal force

under Colonel Wolford, at Philadelphia Station, on the 20th of October, capturing about seven hundred prisoners and six cannon, and on the 6th of November defeated the main army under Burnside, forcing them back to their fortifications at Knoxville, which place he invested on the 17th.

Q. In the mean while, what was General Bragg doing near Chattanooga?

A. He was keeping the Federal army, now under General Thomas, closely confined to their works, and was busy cutting off their supplies.

Q. How was the Federal army reinforced in October?

A. By the two corps of Hooker and Howard, sent from Meade's army in Virginia.

Q. How were the Federals still further reinforced in November?

A. By General Sherman's army from Mississippi.

Q. Who now took command of the Federal armies around Chattanooga?

A. General Grant.

Q. What did the Federal army now number?

A. Not less than eighty-five thousand men.

Q. What did the Confederate army now number?

A. It numbered but little over thirty thousand men, being weakened by its losses at the Chickamauga, and by the detachment of General Longstreet with several thousand troops against Knoxville.

Q. When did the fighting between these two armies commence?

A. On the 24th of November, when Hooker's corps carried the works on Lookout Mountain, which, through bad management, were defended by only one small brigade.

Q. What battle occurred on the 25th?

A. The battle of Missionary Ridge.

Q. What was the result?

A. The left wing of the Confederates, which was the weakest portion of the army, was routed and driven from the field, but the right, consisting of Hardee's corps, held its ground firmly, and, after

the left had given way, retired in perfect order, and by its firm bearing saved the Confederate army from destruction.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates in this disastrous defeat?

A. Their loss was nine thousand men (of whom six thousand were prisoners) and forty cannon.

Q. What was the loss of the Federals?

A. The Federal army lost nearly seven thousand men.

Q. Who was sent in pursuit of the retreating Confederates?

A. General Hooker.

Q. Where was the pursuit checked?

A. At a gap in Taylor's Ridge, near the little village of Ringgold.

Q. How was the pursuit checked?

A. General Cleburne, commanding a division in Hardee's corps, halted his troops along the ridge, and repulsed every attempt of Hooker's troops to drive him from the position, inflicting on the Federals a loss of about one thousand men, of whom two hundred and fifty were prisoners.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates in this battle at Ringgold?

A. Less than two hundred men.

Q. What did General Grant now do?

A. He drew back his forces to Chattanooga, and sent General Sherman to relieve Burnside, who was hard pressed by Longstreet at Knoxville.

Q. When Longstreet heard of Sherman's approach, what did he do?

A. He attempted to carry the works at Knoxville by assault, but failed, with a loss of eight hundred men.

Q. What did he then do?

A. He retired towards Virginia, but defeated a Federal force that attempted to pursue him.

Q. Were the armies in Virginia idle while these events were going on in the West?

A. They were not.

Q. What did Lee do early in October?

A. He set out from his camp on the Rappahannock, with the intention of placing his army on the line of Meade's communications.

Q. What did Lee's movements cause Meade to do?

A. These movements caused Meade to retreat rapidly.

Q. How far did Meade retreat?

A. He retreated as far as Centreville, near Washington.

Q. What did Lee then do?

A. He returned to his former position on the Rappahannock, after destroying the railroad which Meade had used for the transportation of his supplies, and having inflicted on the Federals a loss of three thousand men (most of them prisoners), while his own loss was not half so many.

Q. After Meade returned to his former position on the north bank of the Rappahannock, what brilliant success was obtained by General Russell, commanding a division in Meade's army?

A. He captured some Confederate works at Rappahannock Station, on the north side of the river, taking four cannon and sixteen hundred prisoners.

Q. What did General Meade do in the latter part of November?

A. He crossed the Rapidan, and moved forward with the intention of surprising Lee, hoping thus to defeat his army and then advance on Richmond.

Q. Did he succeed?

A. He did not; for Lee was ready and waiting for him at Mine Run, and on the night of December 1 the Federal army retired to its position on the north of the Rapidan.

Q. On which side was the advantage at the close of 1863?

A. The Federals had the advantage; for, though sometimes disastrously defeated, they had gained important victories, had recovered control of the Mississippi River, and had overrun the State of Tennessee.

CHAPTER V.

Fourth Year of the War between the States.

Q. WHAT was the strength of the Federal and Confederate armies at the beginning of 1864?

A. The Federal armies numbered not less than one million men, while the Confederate armies numbered not more than two hundred and fifty thousand.

Q. When did active military operations begin?

A. In the month of February.

Q. How were they commenced?

A. They were commenced by the invasion of Florida by an army of six thousand Federals under General Seymour.

Q. Where was the invasion checked?

A. At Olustee, or Ocean Pond, by a force of five thousand Confederates under Generals Colquitt and Finnegan.

Q. What was the result of the battle of Olustee?

A. The Confederates gained a brilliant victory, inflicting upon the Federals a loss of at least two thousand men, while their own was about nine hundred, and capturing five cannon and three thousand small arms.

Q. What were the Federals compelled to do after this defeat?

A. They were compelled to give up the invasion of Florida.

Q. Where did the Confederates gain another brilliant victory on the 22d of February?

A. At Okalona, in Mississippi, where the Confederate cavalry under General Forrest utterly defeated a large force of Federal cavalry commanded by General Grierson, capturing many prisoners and ten cannon, and driving the Federals in complete rout back to Memphis.

Q. What important result followed this victory?

A. General Sherman, who, with fifty thousand men, had set out from Vicksburg with the design of assailing Mobile in the rear, and had advanced as far as Meridian, was forced to abandon his expedition and return to Vicksburg.

Q. What occurred on the 25th of February, at Rocky Face Ridge, to the north of Dalton, Georgia?

A. Four divisions of the Federal army encountered two divisions of the Confederate army, but were repulsed with considerable loss.

Q. Who was in command of the Confederate army at Dalton?

A. General Joseph E. Johnston, who had taken command one month after Bragg's defeat at Missionary Ridge.



JOE JOHNSTON.

Q. Where did the Confederates gain still greater successes?

A. On the west of the Mississippi River, in Louisiana and Arkansas.

Q. What plan was adopted by the Federals in the campaign on the west of the Mississippi?

A. General Banks, with about forty thousand men, was to advance northward from New Orleans, Louisiana, while General Steele was to move down from Little Rock, Arkansas, with more than seven thousand men.

Q. What did they hope to accomplish?

A. They expected to drive the Confederates entirely out of Louisiana and Arkansas, and then complete their overthrow in Texas.

Q. How was the Federal invasion arrested?

A. The Confederate army under General Dick Taylor attacked the Federals at Mansfield on the 8th of April, and again at Pleasant Hill on the 9th, forcing General Banks to abandon the expedition and return to New Orleans.

Q. When General Steele heard of the defeat of Banks, what did he do?

A. He immediately retreated, and was closely pursued by General Kirby Smith.

Q. What were the losses of the Federals in this campaign?

A. Their losses were fourteen thousand men (of whom nearly six thousand were prisoners), thirty-five cannon, eleven hundred wagons, one gunboat, and three transports.

Q. What were the losses of the Confederates?

A. Less than five thousand in killed, wounded, and missing.

Q. What was the strength of the Confederate army opposed to Banks and Steele?

A. Less than twenty-five thousand men.

Q. What victory did the Confederates gain in Tennessee on the 12th of April?

A. General Forrest captured Fort Pillow by assault.

Q. What brilliant victory was gained by the Confederates on the North Carolina coast on the 20th of April?

A. General Hoke, with about six thousand men, assisted by the iron-clad gunboat Albemarle, attacked Plymouth, and, after a desperate assault, succeeded in carrying the Federal works, capturing the garrison of nearly three thousand men, including General Wessells, the commander of the post, besides twenty-five cannon and a large supply of valuable stores.

Q. While these important events were going on, what celebrated cavalry raids occurred?

A. The raids of Kilpatrick and Dahlgren, in Virginia.

Q. What was the object of these raids?

A. Their object was to surprise Richmond, enter the city, then release the Federal prisoners, and leave them to burn the city and kill the Confederate President and Cabinet.

Q. With what success did they meet?

A. They completely failed, and Dahlgren was killed.

Q. What plan was now adopted by the Federals for the summer of 1864?

A. Two grand campaigns were planned: one against Richmond, in Virginia, the other against Atlanta, in Georgia.

Q. Who commanded the Federal army in Virginia?

A. General Ulysses S. Grant.

Q. Who commanded the Federal forces around Chattanooga?

A. General William T. Sherman.

Q. When did the campaign in Virginia begin?

A. On the 3d of May, when the army of Grant, numbering one hundred and forty thousand men, began to cross the Rapidan.

Q. What was Grant's plan?

A. His own army was to advance from the north upon Richmond; Generals Crook and Sigel were to capture Staunton and Lynchburg and operate upon the rear of the Confederates; while General Butler, with thirty thousand men, was to move up the James River, take Petersburg, and approach Richmond from the south.

Q. What did General Lee do when he ascertained that Grant had crossed the Rapidan?

A. He moved forward to meet him with all the troops at his disposal, numbering not more than fifty-two thousand men.

Q. Where did the two armies meet?

A. In the Wilderness, near the scene of Hooker's disastrous defeat in 1863.

Q. What now occurred?

A. A terrible battle, which lasted during the 5th and 6th of May, and in which the Confederates had decidedly the advantage, the Federals being repulsed at every point.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in this battle?

A. The loss of the Confederate army was nearly eight thousand men, while that of the Federals was fully twenty thousand, of whom six thousand were prisoners.

Q. What did Grant now attempt to do?

A. He attempted by a flank march to Lee's right, made on the night of the 7th of May, to seize Spottsylvania Court-House and get between the Confederate army and Richmond.

Q. What did Lee do on the same night?

A. Thinking that Grant would make this very move, General Lee, on the same night, sent General Stuart to delay the Federal movement in that direction until he could meet the Federal army with all his force, and again bar the way to Richmond.

Q. When Grant reached Spottsylvania Court-House, what did he find?

A. He found that, instead of surprising Lee, he had himself been foiled by the skill with which the great Confederate leader had penetrated his designs.

Q. What now occurred?

A. Several days of skirmishing and desperate fighting.

Q. When did the great battle of Spottsylvania Court-House take place?

A. On the 12th of May.

Q. How did this battle commence?

A. At early dawn General Hancock, leading some of the best troops in Grant's army, surprised and captured an exposed part of the Confederate works, capturing about three thousand men and thirty cannon, and was on the point of breaking through Lee's lines, when General Gordon with two brigades rushed forward and checked the advancing Federals.

Q. What now ensued?

A. A desperate battle, which finally resulted in the complete repulse of the Federals, though Hancock succeeded in carrying off with him eighteen of the cannon which he had captured in the first part of the battle.

Q. What did Grant do after this repulse?

A. He remained quiet for several days, waiting for reinforcements.

Q. What was the result of a movement made by General Lee, on the 19th of May, to turn the right flank of the Federal army?

A. It resulted in the discovery that the Federal army was moving.

Q. What did Lee now suspect?

A. That General Grant was making an attempt to seize upon Hanover Junction, on the North Anna River, which would have enabled him to invest Richmond from the north and northwest.

Q. Were Lee's suspicions correct?

A. They were

Q. Did Grant succeed in his plan?

A. He did not; for Lee reached the position first.

Q. Did Grant again attempt to carry Lee's position?

A. He did not.

Q. What did he do?

A. He made another night march, for the purpose of getting between Lee's army and Richmond.

Q. Being foiled in this, what did he do?

A. He made still another attempt, and again found the Confederate army drawn up, at Cold Harbor, to dispute his advance.

Q. During the movements from Spottsylvania Court-House to Cold Harbor, what distinguished Confederate general was killed?

A. General Stuart, the commander of Lee's cavalry.

Q. Who succeeded Stuart in command of the cavalry?

A. General Wade Hampton, of South Carolina.

Q. What occurred on the 3d of June?

A. General Grant's army assaulted Lee's position at Cold Harbor, but, after an action which lasted less than half an hour, he was repulsed with the loss of more than ten thousand men, while Lee's loss was not much over one thousand.

Q. What had the campaign of one month from the Rapidan to Cold Harbor cost the Federals?

A. It had cost them sixty thousand men, being more than Lee had in his whole army.

Q. What had been the loss of the Confederates during the same time?

A. The Confederate losses during the same time were eighteen thousand men.

Q. Had the other Federal generals who were to co-operate with Grant succeeded any better?

A. They had not ; for Butler was defeated by Beauregard, and Crook and Sigel by Breckinridge.

Q. When had Butler commenced his movement ?

A. On the 6th of May, while Grant and Lee were fighting in the Wilderness.

Q. How was Butler checked ?

A. Beauregard hastened up from Charleston with all the forces at his command, and reached Petersburg about the time that Butler landed at Bermuda Hundreds, between Petersburg and Richmond.

Q. What victory was gained by General Beauregard on the 16th of May ?

A. The battle of Drewry's Bluff, in which Beauregard, with fifteen thousand men, totally defeated Butler's army of thirty thousand, driving the Federals back to Bermuda Hundreds, with the loss to them of five thousand men, and shutting them up within their fortifications, thus preventing them from being of any assistance to Grant.

Q. How was the conjoint movement of Crook and Sigel arrested ?

A. It was arrested by General Breckinridge, who met Sigel at New Market on the 15th of May, and, with a greatly inferior force, assisted by the cadets of the Virginia Military Institute, completely routed the Federals.

Q. After Grant's repulse at Cold Harbor on the 3d of June, what did he find it necessary to do ?

A. To give up his attempt upon Richmond from the north, and to cross the James River and seize upon Petersburg before Lee should be aware of his purpose.

Q. How was it that Grant was able to keep the field after his terrible losses and defeats ?

A. He was reinforced by fresh troops after each defeat, and his army was as large as when the campaign commenced.

Q. Had Lee been reinforced ?

A. He had received nine thousand fresh troops ; but these were not enough to supply his losses.

Q. While Grant was preparing to cross the James, what was General Sheridan ordered to do ?

A. He was ordered with his cavalry to seize Gordonsville and Charlottesville, destroy the railroads at these places, and unite with General Hunter in a movement from the Valley.

Q. How was Sheridan checked ?

A. General Wade Hampton, with a much smaller force, met him at Trevillian's Station on the 12th of June, and routed his command.

Q. Who was sent by Lee to oppose Hunter ?

A. General Early, who drove Hunter from before Lynchburg on the 18th of June, and followed him so closely that his retreat became a disorderly flight.

Q. Was General Grant successful in his attempt to seize upon Petersburg ?

A. He was not ; for, although his advance force reached Petersburg before Lee, they were held in check by some local troops, and when Grant's main army arrived, Lee's army again stood before him to dispute his progress.

Q. What now occurred ?

A. On the 17th and 18th of June, Grant assaulted Lee's lines, but was repulsed with the loss of more than ten thousand men, while the Confederate loss was small.

Q. What other disaster did the Federals sustain about this same time ?

A. A force of eight thousand cavalry, under Generals Wilson and Kautz, which was sent to destroy the Confederate communications with the South and West, was totally defeated, losing many in killed and wounded, more than one thousand men captured, thirteen cannon, and thirty wagons.

Q. How were the remainder of June and the greater part of July spent by the Confederate and Federal armies around Petersburg ?

A. The two armies busied themselves in strengthening their respective positions.

Q. While these stirring events were occurring in Virginia, what was the state of affairs in Northwestern Georgia?

A. A vigorous campaign was being conducted by Sherman and Johnston.

Q. When did the campaign in Georgia commence?

A. On the 4th of May, when General Sherman advanced from Chattanooga against the Confederate position at Dalton.

Q. How large was the army with which Sherman advanced?

A. It numbered about one hundred thousand men.

Q. How large was the Confederate army under Johnston?

A. It numbered when the campaign commenced not more than forty-three thousand men.

Q. What occurred on the 8th and 9th of May?

A. General Sherman with his main army advanced close to the Confederate works, and assaults were made by some of his divisions, which were all repulsed with severe loss to the Federals.

Q. While Sherman was in front of Dalton with his main force, what was done by General McPherson?

A. He moved with a large force to Resaca, in the rear of the Confederate position at Dalton, but was held in check by two brigades until three Confederate divisions came up, when McPherson withdrew to Snake Creek Gap and fortified.

Q. What did Sherman now do?

A. He moved with his army through Snake Creek Gap, with the intention of seizing upon Resaca.

Q. What was Johnston obliged to do in consequence of this movement of Sherman?

A. He was obliged to abandon Dalton and concentrate his army at Resaca.



GENERAL SHERMAN.

Q. What occurred at Resaca on the 14th and 15th of May?

A. Heavy fighting between portions of the two armies, which was in the main to the advantage of the Confederates, the Federals losing five thousand men, while the Confederate loss was not more than half so many.

Q. What was Sherman enabled to do by reason of his superiority of numbers?

A. He was enabled to engage the Confederate army with a force larger than their own, and at the same time send a large force to threaten their communications.

Q. Since Johnston discovered, on the afternoon of the 15th, that Sherman was executing a move of this sort, what did he do?

A. He drew his army that night across the Oostenaula.

Q. What was Sherman's plan throughout the whole of this campaign?

A. His plan was to bring the Confederates to battle on such terms as would insure their decisive defeat, and then move forward and seize Atlanta.

Q. What was Johnston's plan?

A. His plan was to avoid a general engagement, unless the advantage of position should be on the side of the Confederates, and at the same time to delay the march of Sherman as much as possible.

Q. If no opportunity presented itself of defeating Sherman decisively, what did Johnston intend to do?

A. He intended to fall back to his lines near Atlanta, where his position would be as strong as Lee's before Richmond and Petersburg, and there, with the advantage on his side, he expected to utterly defeat the Federal army.

Q. Where did Johnston next take up a position?

A. Near Cassville, where he hoped to have a favorable opportunity of fighting a battle.

Q. Being disappointed in this, what did he do?

A. He crossed the Etowah on the morning of the 20th, and placed his troops along the southern bank of that stream, where they rested for three days.

Q. What brilliant exploit was performed on the 24th by Major-General Wheeler, in command of Johnston's cavalry?

A. He defeated a Federal force, guarding a supply-train, near Cassville, brought off seventy loaded wagons, three hundred horses and mules, one hundred and eighty-two prisoners, and burned a much greater number of wagons with their loads than were brought away.

Q. When it was ascertained that the Federals had crossed the Etowah far to the Confederate left, and were moving in the direction of Dallas, what did Johnston do?

A. He marched promptly to meet the movements of the Federals, and took up a position extending from Dallas to the railroad.

Q. What occurred on the afternoon of the 25th of May?

A. General Hooker's corps of the Federal army attacked Stewart's division of Hood's corps, opposite to New Hope Church.

Q. What was the result of the engagement which now occurred?

A. After a severe struggle of two hours, the Federals were repulsed with the loss of fully two thousand men, while the Confederate loss was not more than four hundred.

Q. When did another fierce engagement occur?

A. On the afternoon of the 27th the Fourth Corps of the Federal army attacked General Cleburne's division, near Little Pumpkin-Vine Creek.

Q. What was the result of this attack?

A. The Federals were repulsed, with the loss of three thousand men, while the loss of the Confederates was only four hundred and fifty.

Q. What happened on the morning of the 28th?

A. While Major-General Bate was reconnoitring the Federal position at Dallas, two of his brigades, through mistake, made an assault, but were repulsed with the loss of three hundred men, while the loss of the Federals was trifling.

Q. What was now the state of affairs for several weeks?

A. The Federal army kept shifting its position, first in one direction, then in another, in the effort to turn the flanks of the

Confederates, each of which movements was skillfully met by General Johnston.

Q. By what were all these movements attended?

A. By constant daily skirmishing, and often the roar of musketry on the skirmish-line could scarcely be distinguished from the sound of a general engagement.

Q. What celebrated Confederate general was killed on the morning of the 14th?

A. General Leonidas Polk.

Q. How long did this state of affairs continue before General Sherman attempted a general assault?

A. Until the 27th of June.

Q. What battle was fought on that day?

A. The battle of Kenesaw Mountain, in which, after a furious cannonade, the Federal army made a general assault upon the Confederate position.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. The Federals were repulsed, with a loss of nearly five thousand men, while the loss of the Confederates was only five hundred and twenty-two.

Q. Since the beginning of the campaign, how had both armies been strengthened?

A. By large bodies of fresh troops; but the reinforcements received by Sherman were far more numerous than those received by Johnston.

Q. While the Federal and Confederate armies were engaged in the constant fighting which finally culminated in the assault on Kenesaw Mountain, what great victory was gained by General Forrest in Mississippi?

A. The battle of Guntown, in which, with a force of six thousand men, Forrest surprised and completely routed a Federal army of twelve thousand, commanded by General Sturgis, inflicting on them a loss of five thousand in killed, wounded, and prisoners, all their artillery (twenty cannon), and their entire train of wagons.

Q. When did this occur?

A. On the 10th of June.

Q. What information did General Johnston receive on the 2d of July, five days after the battle of Kenesaw Mountain?

A. He received information that Sherman was moving his army into a position which would place him nearer to Atlanta than the Confederate army would be if it remained at Kenesaw.

Q. Since Atlanta was the most important place to be defended, what did Johnston do?

A. He retired to the new line near the Chattahoochee, and afterwards crossed that river and stationed his army in the neighborhood of Atlanta.

Q. What can you say of the campaign from the time that Sherman began his advance until the Confederates retired across the Chattahoochee?

A. It had been conducted with great skill by both General Johnston and General Sherman, each of these officers having made the best use of the means at his command.

Q. What can you say of the two armies?

A. They had exhibited the greatest courage and fortitude, having been engaged with each other, either in battle or skirmishing, almost daily for two months.

Q. After the Confederates had retired across the Chattahoochee, what did each commander do?

A. General Sherman gave his army several days of rest, and General Johnston also remained quiet, his army not being large enough to warrant him in assuming the offensive.

Q. In the mean while, what had happened in Virginia?

A. General Lee, feeling strong enough to hold his lines at Richmond and Petersburg, sent Generals Early and Breckinridge through the Valley to threaten Washington and Baltimore.

Q. Give an account of General Early's movements.

A. He moved rapidly down the Valley with about thirteen thousand men, entered Maryland, and created the greatest alarm throughout the North for the safety of Washington and Baltimore.

Q. Where did he fight a battle with the Federals?

A. At Monocacy Bridge, on the 9th of July, where Gordon's division charged and routed the Federals under General Lew Wallace.

Q. What did Early then do?

A. He moved rapidly upon Washington, hoping to reach the city and capture it before the garrison could be reinforced.

Q. Did he succeed?

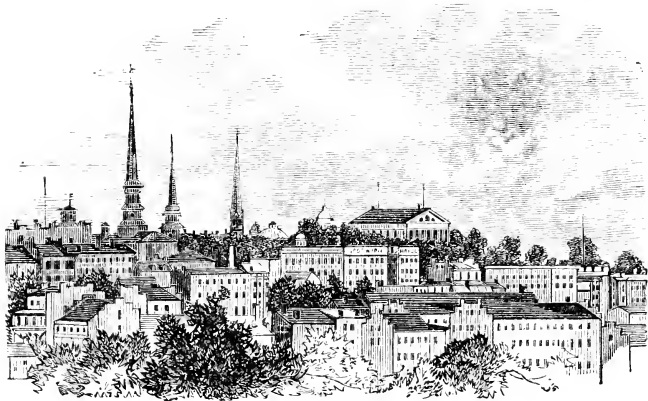
A. He did not; he was just one day too late.

Q. How had Washington been saved from capture?

A. By the arrival of two full corps from Grant's army.

Q. When General Early became aware of this, what did he do?

A. He retired into Virginia, and camped near Winchester.



RICHMOND.

Q. What did Grant now do?

A. Supposing that Early was returning to Richmond, General Grant ordered the two corps that had saved Washington City back to Petersburg, intending to strike Lee a blow before Early could arrive.

Q. As soon as these troops retired, what did General Early do?

A. Instead of retiring to Richmond, he advanced to Martins-

burg, attacked the Federals under General Crook, routed them, and drove them across the Potomac, with the loss of twelve hundred men, including General Mulligan, who was killed.

Q. What expedition was now sent out by General Early?

A. A cavalry expedition under General McCausland, which routed a small Federal force at Carlisle, in Pennsylvania, and, having captured the town of Chambersburg, in the same State, burned the greater part of it (July 30).

Q. How did the Confederates justify the burning of this town?

A. They burned it in retaliation for the burning of a portion of Lexington, in Virginia, and for the many depredations and outrages of General Hunter and other Federal officers in the Valley.

Q. What was the effect of these movements of the Confederates in Pennsylvania?

A. The greatest alarm was excited in Pennsylvania, and the two Federal corps that had started for Petersburg were again sent back after Early.

Q. In the mean while, what disastrous defeat did General Grant suffer at Petersburg?

A. On the 30th of July a fort on the Confederate front was mined and blown up, but when the Federal troops rushed forward to the assault they were met by such a terrible fire that they were driven back into the hollow where the fort had stood, and in a few minutes they suffered a loss of more than four thousand men.

Q. What was the Confederate loss in this affair?

A. Only about three hundred.

Q. Meanwhile, what was going on in Georgia?

A. A desperate struggle for the possession of Atlanta.

Q. When were active operations resumed in Georgia?

A. On the 16th of July, when General Sherman, having crossed the Chattahoochee, began to advance towards Atlanta.

Q. What was the plan adopted by General Johnston for the defense of Atlanta?

A. His plan was to hold the fortifications of Atlanta with the

Georgia State troops, while with his whole army he fell upon the flank and rear of the Federals.

Q. What happened while he was making his preparations to carry out this plan?

A. He was superseded by General John B. Hood, a brave and gallant officer, but one who lacked the military experience and skill of General Johnston.

Q. What was the size of the army turned over to General Hood by General Johnston?

A. It numbered fifty-one thousand men, its losses in the campaign being more than counterbalanced by the reinforcements received.

Q. What were the losses of this army while under General Johnston's command?

A. About ten thousand in killed and wounded, and four thousand from all other causes.

Q. What had been the loss of the Federals during the same time?

A. More than thirty thousand men in all.

Q. How had Sherman's losses been repaired?

A. By heavy reinforcements, so that his army was about as strong as when the campaign commenced at Dalton.

Q. What happened on the afternoon of July 20?

A. General Hood attacked the Federals on Peach-Tree Creek, and at first drove them back, but was at last obliged to abandon the attack, with the loss of about three thousand men, while the Federal loss was seventeen hundred.

Q. When did another great battle occur between these armies?

A. On the 22d of July.

Q. How was this battle brought on?

A. By a movement of the Federal army to flank the right of the Confederate position around Atlanta.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Hood, leaving a force to hold Atlanta, marched with his main army around to Decatur, and fell upon the Federal left

and rear, driving them from their works, and capturing twenty-two cannon, eighteen stands of colors, and fifteen hundred prisoners; but Sherman, bringing forward fresh troops, checked the Confederates in their victorious career, recovering nine of his captured guns.

Q. What more can you say of this battle?

A. Both armies claimed the victory: the Federals, because they had at last succeeded in checking the Confederate advance, and the Confederates, because they had driven the Federals from some of their works and carried off as trophies thirteen cannon and eighteen standards.

Q. What was one of the results of this battle which caused the Confederates to claim the victory?

A. The Federals made no more attempts to flank Atlanta on the east, and it was several days before they began to try on the other side of the city.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in this battle?

A. The loss of the Federal army was about four thousand men, while the Confederates, being the assailants, lost something over five thousand.

Q. What two brave and distinguished generals were killed in this battle?

A. Major-General William H. T. Walker, of the Confederate army, and Major-General James B. McPherson, of the Federal army.

Q. Before attempting to flank Atlanta on the west side, what did General Sherman do?

A. He sent out two cavalry columns, one five thousand strong, under General Stoneman, and the other four thousand strong, under General McCook, with orders to meet at Lovejoy's Station, on the Macon Road, and destroy the Confederate communications.

Q. What was the fate of McCook's column?

A. McCook was attacked at Newnan, Georgia, and defeated, with a loss of six hundred men.

Q. Describe General Stoneman's movements.

A. Stoneman moved down the Macon Road, and at last appeared before Macon, where he encountered Major-General Cobb, with a force consisting of militia and mechanics from the Government workshops, numbering in all not more than eighteen hundred men.

Q. What now ensued?

A. A battle, which lasted for several hours, at the end of which time Stoneman's large force was defeated and driven from the field.

Q. What became of Stoneman and his force?

A. He was pursued by General Iverson and captured, with more than one thousand of his men.

Q. What had been the result of the cavalry expedition from which Sherman expected so much?

A. Two Federal cavalry divisions, numbering in all nine thousand men, had been completely defeated, with the loss of more than three thousand killed, wounded, and captured.

Q. What did this defeat of the Federal cavalry enable General Wheeler, the Confederate cavalry general, to do?

A. It enabled him to make a successful raid to the rear of the Federal army, which he did, tearing up the road at Calhoun and capturing nine hundred beef cattle.

Q. When did Sherman begin his attempt to flank Atlanta on the west?

A. On the 27th of July.

Q. What occurred on the 28th of July?

A. General Hood attacked the right of the Federal army, but was repulsed, with a loss of fifteen hundred men, while the loss of the Federals was only six hundred.

Q. When did another engagement occur on the west of Atlanta?

A. On the 5th of August, near Utoy Creek, when General Schofield's corps of the Federal army assaulted a portion of the Confederate line held by General Bate.

Q. What was the result?

A. The Federals were repulsed, with a loss of four hundred killed and wounded, besides many prisoners and arms, and several stands of colors.

Q. What was now the state of affairs around Atlanta for several weeks?

A. There was constant skirmishing between the two armies, but no pitched battle.

Q. What important victories were gained by the Federals in Mobile Bay during the month of August?

A. Admiral Farragut, with a fleet of twenty-eight ships, assailed the forts and four vessels which defended Mobile Bay, capturing the Confederate iron-clad Tennessee on the 5th of August (on which day Fort Powell was blown up by its garrison), taking possession of Fort Gaines on the 7th, and on the 23d capturing Fort Morgan, with its garrison of fourteen hundred men, taking in all these forts one hundred and four cannon.

Q. What was the result of these Federal victories?

A. The Confederates could no longer use Mobile as a port, though they still held the city.

Q. Turning now to Virginia, what do we find to be the state of affairs?

A. We find the Federal and Confederate armies watching each other, and engaged in constant skirmishing along the whole line, from Petersburg to the vicinity of Richmond.

Q. What occurred between the 13th and 20th of August?

A. General Hancock made several attempts on the Confederate works north of the James, but was at last obliged to abandon the attempt, having lost fifteen hundred men, while the Confederate loss was less than five hundred.

Q. What occurred on the 19th and 20th of August?

A. General Mahone made assaults upon the Federals under General Warren, who had seized the Weldon Railroad, and though he did not succeed in dislodging them from the railroad, he did succeed in forcing the Federals from their advanced position near Petersburg.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in this engagement?

A. The loss of the Federal army was forty-five hundred men,

of whom twenty-five hundred were prisoners, including General Hays, while the Confederate loss was not half so many.

Q. When did the battle of Ream's Station occur?

A. On the 25th of August.

Q. With what result?

A. General A. P. Hill attacked the Federals under General Hancock and utterly defeated them.

Q. What was the loss in both armies in this battle?

A. The Federals lost twenty-five hundred men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, besides nine cannon and three thousand small arms, while the Confederate loss was seven hundred and twenty in killed, wounded, and missing.

Q. What movement was commenced by General Sherman near Atlanta, on the same day on which the Confederates won the battle of Ream's Station, in Virginia?

A. He commenced a movement which ended in placing his army along the line of the Macon Road, near Jonesboro'.

Q. How did General Hood attempt to check this movement?

A. With the corps of Hardee and S. D. Lee he assaulted the Federal position on the 31st of August, but was at last repulsed, with great loss on both sides.

Q. What did Hood now do?

A. Leaving Hardee's corps to hold the works of Jonesboro', he moved back to Atlanta with the corps of S. D. Lee, and prepared to evacuate the city.

Q. What happened on the 1st of September, while Hood was at Atlanta with the main army, making his preparations to abandon the city?

A. General Hardee, in command of only one corps, resisted the Federal army of six corps from noon until dark, and although his line was at one time pierced and eight of his cannon captured, he succeeded in holding his position until night ended the contest.

Q. What did this stand of Hardee at Jonesboro' accomplish?

A. It secured the safe withdrawal of the Confederate army from Atlanta.

Q. What did Hardee do during the night?

A. He withdrew with his corps to Lovejoy Station, where he was joined next day by the main army under General Hood, which had retreated from Atlanta on the night of the 1st of September.

Q. What occurred on the 2d of September?

A. Sherman advanced to Lovejoy Station, and an assault was made upon the Confederate position, which was repulsed, with great loss to the assailants.

Q. What did General Sherman now do?

A. He determined to give his army rest after their long campaign, and accordingly retired to Atlanta.

Q. What had been the result of Sherman's movements on the Macon Road?

A. They had resulted in the capture of Atlanta, which was the first decisive victory gained by the Federal army in the year 1864, the forts in Mobile having been captured mainly by the navy.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in the battles around Jonesboro' and Lovejoy which had resulted in the fall of Atlanta?

A. About thirty-five hundred on the Confederate side, and two thousand on that of the Federals.

Q. Where did the Federals next meet with important successes?

A. In the Valley of Virginia.

Q. What was the strength of the Federal army in the Valley?

A. It numbered forty thousand men, of which force ten thousand were cavalry, the whole commanded by General Philip Sheridan.

Q. What was the strength of the Confederate army in the Valley?

A. It numbered about thirteen thousand men, of which two thousand were cavalry, and was commanded by General Jubal

A. Early.

Q. When and where did the first battle occur between Sheridan and Early?

A. At Winchester, on the 19th of September.

Q. Give an account of this battle.

A. General Sheridan attacked the Confederate position in the morning, but the Southern soldiers bravely held their ground against great odds, repulsing assault after assault, until nearly night, when they were driven from the field with the loss of three thousand men (two-thirds of whom were prisoners) and five cannon.

Q. What was the loss of the Federals in this battle?

A. Their loss was over three thousand in killed and wounded.

Q. What battle occurred on the 22d of September?

A. The battle of Fisher's Hill.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. The Confederates were routed, with the loss of one thousand prisoners, besides many killed and wounded, together with sixteen cannon and a large amount of commissary stores.

Q. What was General Early now obliged to do?

A. He was obliged to abandon the Valley and retire to the mountains.

Q. What did General Sheridan now do?

A. He marched through the Valley, spreading ruin and desolation through that beautiful region.

Q. What bold movement was made by General Early about the middle of October, after his losses had been made up by reinforcements?

A. He moved again down the Valley, and camped near Fisher's Hill.

Q. What did Early do on the 19th of October?

A. Learning that the Federal army was totally ignorant of his being so near, he made an attempt to surprise them in their camp at Cedar Creek.

Q. Where was General Sheridan at this time?

A. He was in Winchester, several miles away.

Q. Did Early succeed in his efforts to surprise the Federal army?

A. He did.

Q. Give an account of the surprise of the Federal army.

A. Just at dawn, General Gordon, leading three divisions of

Early's army, fell upon the Federal left and rear, while General Kershaw led two divisions against their right and front, completely routing two corps of the Federals, and forcing the third one to abandon the field, capturing fifteen hundred prisoners and twenty-four cannon.

Q. Did the Confederates improve this victory?

A. They did not, although their only hope of decisively defeating Sheridan's vastly superior army was in rapidly following up their success and giving the Federals no chance to rally.

Q. When the Federals found that they were no longer pursued, what did they do?

A. They rallied and reformed their lines, being assisted in this by the example of the corps which had retreated in order when the rest of the army was routed.



GENERAL GORDON.

Q. How were they encouraged?

A. By the arrival of Sheridan at ten o'clock, who immediately took command.

Q. What resolution did Sheridan now form?

A. He determined to retake his captured camp.

Q. When did he advance for this purpose?

A. At three o'clock in the afternoon.

Q. Was his effort to retake his camp successful?

A. It was; for the Confederates were in their turn routed, with the loss of fifteen hundred prisoners and twenty-three cannon, and also the twenty-four guns which they had captured in the morning.

Q. What was the total loss of the two armies in this double battle?

A. Between three and four thousand on each side.

Q. What was done by the Confederate authorities towards the close of the fall?

A. The greater part of Early's army was placed under the command of General Gordon and ordered back to Petersburg.

Q. What attempts were made by General Grant in the latter part of October?

A. He made two attempts to push forward his lines, one on the north and the other on the south side of the James.

Q. What was the result of these efforts?

A. Both attempts were foiled, the one on the north side of the river being repulsed by General Longstreet, and the one on the south side by General Mahone.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in this attempt of Grant to break through Lee's lines?

A. The loss of the Federals was two thousand men, while that of the Confederates was very small.

Q. What was done by General Price on the west of the Mississippi River in the months of September and October?

A. He advanced with a small Confederate army into Missouri, and penetrated far into the interior of the State, but on the 23d of October he was attacked by General Rosecrans, defeated with great loss, and driven back into Arkansas.

Q. What campaign was projected by General Hood in September?

A. A campaign into Tennessee for the purpose of forcing General Sherman to retreat from Georgia.

Q. When did this campaign commence?

A. On the 28th of September, when Hood began to move towards the Chattahoochee.

Q. Give an account of Hood's movements.

A. After crossing the Chattahoochee, he sent General French to capture Allatoona, but French was repulsed; then he moved northward to Resaca, destroying the railroad for twenty miles; then captured Dalton, with its garrison, and destroyed the railroad to Tunnel Hill.

Q. What did Sherman do in consequence of these movements of Hood?

A. He left one corps of his army to hold Atlanta, while with the rest he marched to the northward, to bring Hood to battle.

Q. Since he could not bring Hood to battle, and as the departure of the Confederate army from Georgia left no force in that State capable of opposing him, what did Sherman resolve to do?

A. He determined to cut loose from his base of supplies at Atlanta and march through Georgia to the sea.

Q. Before putting this plan in operation, what did he do?

A. He sent General Thomas into Tennessee with a force sufficient to oppose Hood.

Q. Since the execution of his plan of marching to the sea would compel him to abandon Atlanta and Northern Georgia to the Confederates, what did he do?

A. He destroyed the railroad from Dalton to Atlanta, burned the foundries and mills in Rome and other places, and destroyed the city of Atlanta.

Q. When did he begin his march through Georgia?

A. On the 13th of November.

Q. When did Hood enter the State of Tennessee?

A. On the 19th of November.

Q. What was the size of the army with which he entered Tennessee?

A. It numbered thirty-five thousand infantry and artillery and ten thousand cavalry.

Q. Where and when did Hood fight his first battle after entering the State of Tennessee?

A. At Franklin, on the 1st of December.

Q. What was the size of the Federal army at Franklin?

A. It numbered about twenty thousand men.

Q. By whom was it commanded?

A. By General Schofield.

Q. What was the result of the battle of Franklin?

A. After a desperate battle, General Hood succeeded in occu-

pying the Federal works, and General Schofield retreated to Nashville.

Q. What were the losses of the Confederates in this battle?

A. Since they assaulted the fortified position of the Federals, they suffered terribly, and lost at least five thousand men, including the gallant General Cleburne, one of the best officers in Hood's army.

Q. What were the losses of the Federals?

A. The Federals lost twenty-three hundred, of whom eleven hundred were prisoners.

Q. Where did the decisive battle of the Tennessee campaign occur?

A. At Nashville, to which place General Hood followed the retreating Federals.

Q. Who had command of the Federal army at Nashville?

A. Major-General George H. Thomas.

Q. When did General Thomas attack Hood?

A. On the 15th and 16th of December.

Q. What was the size of the army with which he made the attack?

A. It numbered at least sixty thousand men.

Q. What was the result of the battle?

A. Hood's army (which, with its cavalry absent, numbered not more than thirty thousand) was completely routed, with a loss of more than twelve thousand men and fifty-three cannon, besides a vast amount of small arms and military supplies of all kinds.

Q. How was the pursuit of the scattered remnants checked?

A. By the swollen rivers, and by the undaunted courage of the rear-guard, consisting of four thousand infantry, under General Walthall, and a part of Forrest's cavalry, which succeeded in joining Hood at Columbia.

Q. Meanwhile, what was General Sherman doing?

A. He was on his march through Georgia with an army of sixty-five thousand men, and, as there was no army in the State to oppose him, he appeared near Savannah on the 10th of December.

Q. When did he capture Fort McAllister?

A. On the 13th of December.

Q. What happened on the 20th of December?

A. He entered the city of Savannah, which had been abandoned by the Confederates.

Q. While Sherman was still on his march through Georgia, what battle was fought in South Carolina, on the line of the Charleston and Savannah Railroad?

A. The battle of Honey Hill, in which a Federal force, led by General Hatch, was defeated with the loss of seven hundred and fifty men.

Q. What happened at the entrance of Cape Fear River on the 24th and 25th of December?

A. An attack was made upon Fort Fisher by a Federal fleet, but the Federals were repulsed.

Q. What was the condition of affairs at the close of 1864?

A. The year which had opened with such brilliant victories for the Confederates closed with the Federal arms triumphant in almost every quarter.

Q. How had it fared with the Confederate cruisers on the ocean?

A. The Alabama had been sunk by the Kearsarge on the 19th of June, while the Florida had been captured by the Wachusett on the 7th of October.

Q. What important political event occurred in the autumn of 1864?

A. A Presidential election was held in the United States.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Republican party?

A. Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, was again their candidate for President, and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, who had sided with the Federal Government when his State seceded, was their candidate for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic, or Anti-Administration party?

A. General George B. McClellan, of the Federal army, was

their candidate for President, and Honorable George H. Pendleton, of Ohio, was their candidate for Vice-President.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Lincoln and Johnson were elected by an overwhelming majority.

Q. What other political event of importance occurred on the 31st of October?

A. The admission of Nevada as a State of the Federal Union.

CHAPTER VI.

*End of the War between the States.—Death of President Lincoln.
—Administration of Andrew Johnson.*

Q. WHAT was the strength of the armies at the beginning of 1865?

A. The Federal armies numbered one million men, while those of the Confederates numbered only one hundred and fifty thousand men.

Q. What attempt was made early in February?

A. An attempt was made to end the war by negotiations between President Lincoln and certain Commissioners appointed by the Confederate Government.

Q. Who were the Confederate Commissioners?

A. Alexander H. Stephens, the Confederate Vice-President, John A. Campbell, and R. M. T. Hunter.

Q. Where did Mr. Lincoln meet the Commissioners?

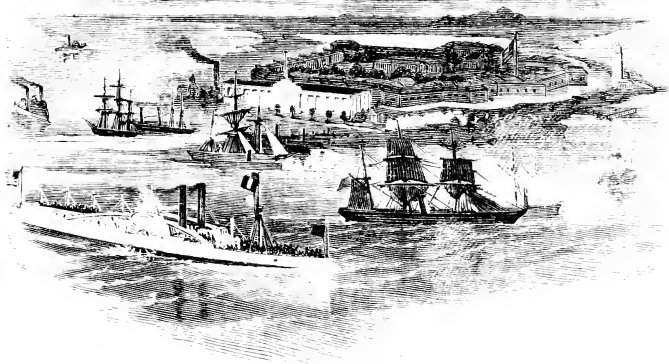
A. Near Fortress Monroe.

Q. Was this attempt at negotiation successful?

A. It was not; and, accordingly, the war went on.

Q. Between the time when this conference was first proposed

and the time when it was held, what important victory was gained by the Federals?



FORTRESS MONROE.

A. Fort Fisher, at the entrance of the Cape Fear River, was captured by General Alfred Terry, with its garrison of two thousand men, and one hundred and sixty-nine heavy guns, on the 15th of January.

Q. What happened on the 6th of February, three days after the failure of the negotiations?

A. General Grant, in attempting to turn Lee's right, received a bloody check at Hatcher's Run, the Federals losing two thousand men, while the Confederate loss was less than half as many.

Q. When did General Sherman begin to advance from Savannah northward through South Carolina?

A. Early in February.

Q. Whom did he send against Augusta?

A. General Kilpatrick, with a division of cavalry.

Q. By whom was Kilpatrick opposed?

A. By General Wheeler, commanding a force of Confederate cavalry.

Q. Where did a battle occur between these forces?

A. Near Aiken, in South Carolina, on the 11th of February.

Q. What was the result?

A. The Federals were routed, and thus Augusta was saved from capture.

Q. What course did Sherman take?

A. He advanced with his army of sixty thousand men to Columbia.

Q. When did he take Columbia?

A. On the 17th of February.

Q. Who was in command of the Confederate forces in this quarter?

A. General Beauregard.

Q. What can you say of the force under his command?

A. It was too small to attempt anything against Sherman.

Q. What occurred while the Federals were occupying Columbia?

A. The city was fired in several places, and more than two-thirds of it burned to the ground.

Q. In consequence of the capture of Columbia, what was done by General Hardee, the commander of the Confederate forces in Charleston?

A. He evacuated Charleston and marched to the northward, to join his forces with those of General Beauregard.

Q. In this last extremity, who was placed in command of the forces operating against Sherman?

A. General Joseph E. Johnston, whose removal from the command of the army of the Tennessee had been followed by so many disasters, was now summoned to make one more effort to restore the falling fortunes of the Confederacy.

Q. Besides the forces of Beauregard and Hardee, what others were added to Johnston's command?

A. The forces of General Bragg, that had been withdrawn from Wilmington.

Q. What happened on the 8th of March?

A. General Bragg, with about eight thousand men, attacked a superior force of the Federals at Kinston, and drove them three miles, inflicting upon them heavy loss in killed and wounded, and capturing fifteen hundred prisoners and three cannon.

Q. Why was he unable to improve this victory?

A. Because a body of Federal troops was soon concentrated in his front too large for his small army to oppose.

Q. What occurred on the morning of the 10th?

A. General Wade Hampton surprised the camp of the Federal cavalry, General Kilpatrick, and routed the Federals, capturing their camp and artillery, but, upon the arrival of reinforcements, Kilpatrick recovered his camp.

Q. What was the most important result of this attack upon Kilpatrick's camp?

A. General Hampton's command captured five hundred prisoners, and released one hundred and seventy-three Confederates who were prisoners in the hands of the Federals.

Q. What battle occurred on the 16th of March?

A. The battle of Averysboro', fought by General Hardee, against a Federal force three times greater than his own.

Q. What was the result of this battle?

A. General Hardee was flanked out of his first position, but immediately took up a new one, from which the Federals found it impossible to dislodge him.

Q. What did General Hardee do at night on account of information received that the Federals were marching around to his left?

A. He retired towards Smithfield.

Q. What did General Johnston succeed in doing by the 18th of March?

A. He succeeded in concentrating fifteen thousand men near Bentonville.

Q. What occurred on the next morning?

A. The Confederates attacked the Federals under General Slocum, numbering at least thirty-five thousand men.

Q. What was the result of the battle which occurred?

A. General Hardee, commanding troops from the army of Tennessee, drove the Federal left from their works, capturing three cannon, but General Bragg was held in check by their right.

Q. What occurred on the 20th?

A. The whole of Sherman's army, numbering more than seventy thousand men, was united in Johnston's front, and several assaults were made upon the Confederates, but the assailants were repulsed with heavy loss.

Q. How long did Johnston remain with his small army in front of the Federals?

A. Until the night of the 21st, when the Confederate army marched to Smithfield.

Q. What were the losses of the two armies in the fighting around Bentonville?

A. The Confederates lost two thousand three hundred in killed, wounded, and missing, while the losses of the Federals were fully three thousand.

Q. How were the losses of the Confederates supplied on the 21st?

A. By the arrival of two thousand men from the army of Tennessee, under General Cheatham.

Q. What occurred on the 23d?

A. General Sherman united his army with that of General Schofield near Goldsboro'.

Q. What did the united armies of Schofield and Sherman number?

A. They numbered nearly one hundred thousand men.

Q. How did General Sherman spend his time during the next two weeks?

A. In collecting supplies and in making preparations to march into Virginia.

Q. Meanwhile, how was General Johnston's army strengthened?

A. By the arrival of several thousand more troops from the army of Tennessee.

Q. What did Johnston's army number by the 10th of April?

A. It numbered twenty-five thousand men.

Q. While Sherman was marching through the Carolinas, what happened in Virginia?

A. General Sheridan, with a cavalry force of ten thousand men, having captured the most of General Early's command (two thousand in all) at Waynesboro', came down from the Shenandoah Valley, laying waste the country, and joined Grant near Petersburg on the 26th of March.

Q. How was Grant's right wing endangered on the 25th of March, just before the arrival of Sheridan?

A. By a bold assault on Fort Steadman.

Q. Describe the assault on Fort Steadman.

A. General Gordon assaulted and carried the Federal works, capturing nine cannon, eight mortars, and five hundred prisoners, but, not being properly supported, was obliged to withdraw, abandoning the captured guns, which were, however, disabled.

Q. What was the Federal loss in this affair?

A. The Federal loss was twenty-five hundred men.

Q. What was the loss of the Confederates?

A. Their loss was fully three thousand.

Q. What was now the state of affairs around Petersburg?

A. Lee, with only thirty-three thousand effective soldiers, was now pressed in his trenches, which extended a distance of thirty-five miles, by forces numbering nearly two hundred thousand men.

Q. What occurred on the 31st of March?

A. General Sheridan, in an attempt to turn the Confederate right, was defeated near Dinwiddie Court-House by General Pickett, with a loss of three thousand men.

Q. What occurred on the next day?

A. General Sheridan, at the head of thirty thousand men, fell upon General Pickett's force of less than ten thousand, and, though bravely resisted, finally gained a complete victory, inflicting upon the Confederates a loss of nearly six thousand men.

Q. What occurred on the 2d of April?

A. General Grant, by a concentration of forces, succeeded in making a breach in the Confederate lines of defense near Petersburg, and forced the Confederates into their inner line of works, close to the city.

Q. When the Confederates were driven from their outer line, what caused a delay in the movements of the Federals and enabled the Confederates to rally in their last line of works?

A. The obstinate defense of Fort Gregg by its garrison of only two hundred and fifty men, who repulsed three assaults made by Gibson's division; and when at last the fort was captured, all but thirty of its brave defenders were killed or wounded, while five hundred Federals lay stretched upon the ground.

Q. What was the result when the Federals assaulted the inner line of works near Petersburg?

A. They were repulsed with great loss.

Q. What did this repulse enable Lee to do?

A. It enabled him to hold Petersburg until night, when he could withdraw his army without being molested.

Q. What did Lee do on the night of the 2d?

A. He withdrew his army, now numbering only twenty-five thousand men, from the lines of Petersburg and Richmond, which he had held so long and skillfully.

Q. When did the Federals occupy Petersburg and Richmond?

A. On the 3d of April.

Q. In what condition did they find Richmond?

A. They found the city in flames, the destruction of the public works having set fire to it, and it was with difficulty that the fire was subdued.

Q. What was Lee's plan when he left Petersburg and Richmond?

A. He intended to move down into North Carolina and join his forces to those of General Johnston.

Q. How were his plans foiled?

A. When he reached Amelia Court-House, he found that the supplies for his army which he expected to meet there had been by mistake sent on to Richmond, and the delay which this caused enabled the Federals to head him off.

Q. In what direction did he now turn?

A. He moved towards Lynchburg, hard pressed by the pursuing Federals, and frequently repulsing attacks upon his flanks and rear.

Q. When was he at length completely surrounded by the pursuing hosts?

A. On the 9th of April, near Appomattox Court-House.

Q. What was the condition of his army on that day?

A. The sufferings of the troops had been so great that only eight thousand of them were able to carry their arms, and they were surrounded by an army of nearly one hundred and eighty thousand men.

Q. What did Lee now find it necessary to do?

A. He found it necessary to surrender.

Q. What can you say of the terms given by General Grant?

A. They were of the most liberal character, and reflected more honor upon him than his victory.

Q. Give a synopsis of the terms of the surrender.

A. After stacking their arms and colors, the officers and men, having given an obligation not to take up arms until exchanged, were permitted to return to their homes, safe from any molestation by the Federal authorities, the officers being allowed to retain their side-arms, and officers and men to retain such horses as were their own private property.

Q. When did President Davis, his Cabinet, and other officials leave Richmond?

A. On the night of the 2d of April, when Lee's army abandoned its lines at Petersburg.

Q. After an interview with Generals Johnston and Beauregard at Greensboro', in North Carolina, what did President Davis authorize General Johnston to do?

A. He authorized him to make such terms as he could with Sherman for a termination of the war.

Q. When and where did Generals Johnston and Sherman meet and arrange terms of pacification?

A. On the 18th of April, at the house of a Mr. Bennett, near Dunham's Station, in North Carolina.

Q. Give a synopsis of the terms then agreed upon.

A. The troops were to march to their respective States and deposit their arms in the State arsenals, each officer and man pledging himself to cease from acts of war and abide the action of State and Federal authority; the President of the United States to recognize the several State governments on their officers and Legislatures taking the oath of allegiance to the United States, and all persons to be secured in person, property, and political rights.

Q. What was designed by this agreement?

A. It was designed to immediately restore the Union and end the war.

Q. Why did General Sherman think that these terms would be accepted by the Government of the United States?

A. On account of the frequent declarations of the Government of the United States that the restoration of the Union was the sole object of the war, and because he believed that the terms agreed with the views expressed by President Lincoln.

Q. Were these terms accepted by the United States?

A. They were not.

Q. What is probably the reason of their rejection?

A. The fact that President Lincoln had been assassinated, in consequence of which the people of the North were very much exasperated, and Vice-President Johnson, who now became President, was accordingly not inclined to grant such liberal terms.

Q. When and where was President Lincoln assassinated?

A. On the 14th of April, at Ford's Theatre, in Washington City.

Q. By whom was the horrible crime committed?

A. By John Wilkes Booth, an actor of considerable note.

Q. What became of Booth?

A. He was pursued for several days, finally overtaken, and shot.

Q. When General Johnston was informed of the rejection of the terms, what did he do?

A. He had another interview with General Sherman, at the same place where the first interview was held.

Q. For what purpose was this interview held?

A. For the purpose of arranging terms for the capitulation of all the Confederate troops in Johnston's department.

Q. What did his department embrace?

A. It embraced the States of North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida.

Q. When were the terms of capitulation agreed upon?

A. On the 26th of April, 1865.

Q. What were the terms of the capitulation?

A. They were similar to those agreed upon between Lee and Grant.

Q. In what respect did they differ from those accorded to Lee?

A. Each brigade or separate body of troops was permitted to retain a number of arms equal to one-seventh of its effective strength, which, when the troops reached the capitals of their States, were to be disposed of as the general commanding the department might direct.

Q. What important events occurred in Alabama and Georgia between the surrender of Lee and the final agreement between Sherman and Johnston?

A. Mobile yielded to a combined attack by land and water, and General Wilson, with a cavalry expedition from Nashville, captured the cities of Selma, Montgomery, Columbus, and Macon.

Q. When the pacification agreed upon between Sherman and Johnston was made known, what did General Wilson do?

A. He marched his command back to Tennessee.

Q. By what was the capitulation of Johnston followed?

A. It was followed by the capitulation of all the Confederate armies.

Q. By whom was the last surrender made?

A. By General E. Kirby Smith, in Texas, on the 26th of May.

Q. When and where did the last actual collision of hostile forces occur?

A. On the 13th of May, at Palmetto Ranch, on the Rio Grande, in Texas.

Q. Give an account of this affair.

A. Colonel Barrett, commanding a considerable force of Federal cavalry, was defeated by the Confederate cavalry under General J. E. Slaughter and chased for fifteen miles.

Q. What happened on the 29th of May?

A. Andrew Johnson, who had become President by the death of Mr. Lincoln, issued a proclamation announcing the end of the war, and offering amnesty, on certain conditions, to all who had sided with the Confederacy, with the exception of fourteen designated classes.

Q. What became of the civil officers of the Confederate States?

A. Some of them left the country; Mr. Davis, the President, was captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe; and Mr. Stephens, the Vice-President, was imprisoned in Fort Warren.

Q. How long did Mr. Davis and Mr. Stephens remain in confinement?

A. Mr. Stephens was soon released; but Mr. Davis remained a prisoner for nearly two years, and was then released without a trial.

Q. What other proclamation was issued by President Johnson on the same day on which he announced the cessation of hostilities?

A. He issued a proclamation appointing a Provisional Governor of North Carolina, and providing for the assemblage of a convention in that State.

Q. For what purpose was this convention called?

A. For the purpose of forming a new constitution for the State,

under which it would be recognized by the President as once more a member of the Federal Union.

Q. By whom was this convention to be chosen?

A. By such persons as were recognized as citizens by the Constitution of North Carolina as it existed before the war.

Q. What was the policy of the President towards the other Southern States?

A. It was the same as that adopted in the case of North Carolina.

Q. What terms were required of them?

A. They were required to annul their ordinances of secession, renew their obligations to the Federal Union, make new State constitutions, and accept and adopt the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States.

Q. For what did this Thirteenth Amendment provide?

A. It provided for the prohibition of slavery forever in all the States of the Union.

Q. Did the Southern States comply with the required terms?

A. They did, and elected Senators and Representatives to the Federal Congress.

Q. What occurred when the Congress assembled in December, 1865?

A. The Congress, in which the "Radicals," or most violent wing of the Republican party, had a large majority, refused to admit the Senators and Representatives from the Southern States.

Q. What condition did they require of the Southern States?

A. They required them to ratify still another amendment to the Constitution, known as the Fourteenth Amendment.

Q. What was the design of the Fourteenth Amendment?

A. Its design was to make citizens of the negroes, and at the same time to fix political disabilities on every man in the Southern States who had ever before the war held any office of honor or trust, either State or Federal.

Q. Since in proposing this amendment they refused the Southern States any voice or hearing, what did the President do?

A. He opposed these measures of Congress and pronounced them unconstitutional.

Q. To what did this lead?

A. It led to a violent quarrel between the President and Congress.

Q. Of what were the Republican members of Congress guilty?

A. In attempting to compel the Southern States to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment they were guilty of making war upon not only the Constitution, but also the Union, for the preservation of which they had waged a four-years' war.

Q. When the Southern States refused to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment, as they had a perfect right to do under the Constitution, what was done by the Republican majority in Congress?

A. They declared that the States of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Arkansas, Louisiana, and Texas were in a state of rebellion, and divided them into five military districts, each governed by an officer of the Federal army.

Q. Why was not Tennessee included among these States?

A. Because Tennessee had been re-admitted to representation just before the close of the war.

Q. When were these unconstitutional and oppressive measures of Congress adopted?

A. In March, 1867, or nearly two years after the close of the war.

Q. What did President Johnson do?

A. He vetoed these measures, and also others of a like character.

Q. How were his vetoes overruled?

A. By a two-thirds vote in both Houses of Congress.

Q. With whom did the President have a quarrel?

A. With Mr. Stanton, the Secretary of War, who continued to hold his office in defiance of the order of the President dismissing him therefrom.

Q. To what did this lead?

A. This led to the impeachment of the President by the House on the 22d of February, 1868.

Q. By whom was the President tried?

A. He was tried by the Senate, Chief-Justice Chase presiding.

Q. When did the Senate come to a decision?

A. On the 26th of May.

Q. What was the result?

A. The President was acquitted by one vote.

Q. What was done under the revolutionary reconstruction measures of Congress?

A. New conventions were called in the ten Southern States.

Q. What was the most outrageous feature of these reconstruction measures?

A. The disfranchisement of thousands of the white race in each of the ten Southern States, and the conferring of unlimited suffrage on the negro race.

Q. What was done by the State Governments established under the reconstruction measures?

A. The Fourteenth Amendment was adopted by them, and thus was obtained the consent of the requisite number of States to make that amendment a part of the Federal Constitution.

Q. What occurred during the fall of 1868?

A. Another election for President and Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Republican party?

A. General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, for President, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, for Vice-President.

Q. Who were the candidates of the Democratic party?

A. Horatio Seymour, of New York, for President, and General Francis P. Blair, of Missouri, for Vice-President.

Q. What can you say of General Blair?

A. He had been one of the most gallant of the Federal generals, but was opposed to the reconstruction measures of Congress, and denounced them as infamous and revolutionary.

Q. What was the result of the election?

A. Grant and Colfax were elected.

Q. Before speaking of Grant's administration, what other events of Johnson's administration deserve special notice?

A. The admission of Nebraska as a State, the purchase of Alaska from Russia, and a treaty with Denmark for the purchase of the islands of St. Thomas and St. John.

Q. When was Nebraska admitted as a State?

A. On the 1st of March, 1867.

Q. When was Alaska, or Russian America, purchased?

A. During the summer of the same year.

Q. What can you say of the treaty with Denmark for the purchase of the islands of St. Thomas and St. John?

A. It was rejected by the Senate.

Q. What distinguished American died during Mr. Johnson's administration?

A. Ex-President Buchanan.

Q. When did he die?

A. On the 1st of June, 1868.

CHAPTER VII.

Administration of President Grant.

Q. WHEN was Ulysses S. Grant, the eighteenth President of the United States, inaugurated?

A. On the 4th of March, 1869.

Q. How was the beginning of General Grant's administration signalized?

A. By the completion of the Pacific Railroad, connecting St. Louis, in Missouri, with San Francisco, in California.

Q. What important political event occurred in the year 1870?

A. The restoration of all the Southern States to the Union and to representation in Congress.

Q. Which was the last of the Southern States restored to representation in Congress?

A. Georgia.

Q. What can you say of the Southern States since the war?

A. Some of them are rapidly recovering their former prosperity.

Q. Which are the most prosperous of the Southern States?

A. Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, Texas, and North Carolina.

Q. To what do they owe their prosperity?

A. To the fact that the white population in those States is largely in excess of the negro population, and hence their State Governments are entirely in the hands of the whites, the only race that ought ever to bear rule in this country.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

Q. What is one of the most important measures of Grant's administration?

A. The adoption of the Fifteenth Amendment to the Federal Constitution, which, like the Fourteenth Amendment, was carried through by force and usurpation.

Q. What does the Fifteenth Amendment declare?

A. It declares that the right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

Q. What more can you say of the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments?

A. They have served to keep alive a bitterness of feeling which but for them would have long since died out.

Q. What is sincerely to be hoped?

A. It is sincerely to be hoped that the people of the North and the South will ere long forget the strife and bitterness of the past, and that they will vie with each other in re-establishing the only true safeguard of American liberty, which is reverence for the Constitution, and for the rights of the States thereunder.

Q. What event occurred on the 12th of October, 1870, which spread great sorrow throughout the Southern States?

A. The death of General Robert E. Lee, the illustrious commander of the Southern armies in Virginia during the war between the States.

Q. Where did he reside at the time of his death?

A. He resided at Lexington, Virginia, and was President of Washington College, which has since been called the Washington Lee University.

Q. What can you say of General Lee?

A. He was one of the purest and noblest men of this or any age, and is by many regarded as the greatest general that America ever produced.

Q. What can you say of the news of his death?

A. The news of his death was received with great sorrow, not

only in the South, but also in the North, and appropriate honors were paid to his memory in all parts of the country.

Q. What occurred in the fall of 1872?

A. Another Presidential election.

Q. What was the result of this election?

A. General Grant was re-elected President, and Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, was chosen Vice-President.

Q. Who were the opponents of Grant and Wilson?

A. Horace Greeley, of New York, for President, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, for Vice-President.

Q. What occurred shortly after the Presidential election?

A. Horace Greeley, the rival of General Grant for the Presidency, died after a brief illness.

GENERAL REVIEW.

I. The attention of the new administration was soon called ¹to the necessity of enforcing the laws among the Mormons in the Territory of Utah, and ²Colonel Albert Sidney Johnston was sent into the Territory, who brought the Mormon War (as it was called) to a close in the summer of 1858. During the whole of Buchanan's administration the slavery question was bitterly agitated, and on the application of Kansas for admission into the Union under the Lecompton Constitution, even ³the Democratic party became hopelessly divided. On the 11th of May, 1858, ⁴Minnesota was admitted into the Union. In August of this year was completed ⁵the ocean telegraph between Great Britain and the United States. In February, 1859, ⁶Oregon was admitted as a State. In October of this year occurred ⁷the famous John Brown raid. John Brown, who was a notorious Kansas ruffian, being furnished with money and arms by the Abolition agitators, at the head of a body of

men seized the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and endeavored to incite the negroes to rise against their masters; but he met with no encouragement from the slaves, his forces were scattered by the United States marines, and ⁸*he was himself captured, tried and executed under the laws of Virginia.* The sympathy shown for this villain in many parts of the North, and especially the fact that the official authorities of some of those Northern States in which the Republicans had control applauded the conduct of this murderer, ⁹*greatly embittered the minds of the Southern people, and thus materially aided in bringing on that bloody war which constitutes the saddest period of American history,* when the mournful spectacle was presented to the world of "a land rent with civil feuds and drenched in fraternal blood." When the time came to elect a new President in the fall of 1860, the conservative elements of the country were hopelessly divided. By one wing of the Democratic party ¹⁰*Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, was nominated for President, and Herschel V. Johnson, of Georgia, for Vice-President.* The other wing of the party nominated ¹¹*John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, for President, and Joseph Lane, of Oregon, for Vice-President.* The American party nominated ¹²*John Bell, of Tennessee, for President, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President.* In opposition to all these sundered elements of conservatism the Republicans presented a bold and united front, and put in nomination ¹³*for the Presidency Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, and for the Vice-Presidency, Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine.*

- I.—1. To what was the attention of the new Administration soon called? 2. Who brought the Mormon War to a close? 3. What happened upon the application of Kansas for admission under the Lecompton Constitution? 4. What State was admitted on the 11th of May, 1858? 5. What was completed in August of this year? 6. What State was admitted in February, 1859? 7. What occurred in October of this year? 8. What became of John Brown? 9. What is said of the sympathy shown for him in many parts of the North? 10. Who were nominated by one wing of the Democratic party in the fall of 1860? 11. Who by the other wing of the party? 12. Who by the American party? 13. Who were nominated by the Republicans?

II. ¹*The candidates of the Republicans* were elected. The majority of the people in most of the Southern States now believed ²*that the only course left to them was to withdraw from the Federal Union.* Their chief reason for this was, ³*the danger to the rights of the States which they feared from the centralizing principles of the Republican party.* Before the time arrived for the retirement of Mr. Buchanan and the inauguration of Mr. Lincoln, seven States, namely, ⁴*South Carolina, Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas,* had seceded from the Union and formed a government of their own, with the capital at Montgomery, in Alabama. ⁵*Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi,* was elected President, and ⁶*Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia,* Vice-President, of the new Confederacy. Commissioners from the Confederate States (as the new government was styled) were sent to Washington ⁷*to treat with the United States authorities for a peaceful separation;* but ⁸*they accomplished nothing.* The "Peace Congress," which was called at the instigation of Virginia, also ⁹*failed to bring about any good results.* In the midst of these events ¹⁰*Kansas was admitted into the Union as a State.* In this excited state of affairs ¹¹*Mr. Lincoln was inaugurated.*

II.—1. Who were elected? 2. What did the majority of the people in most of the Southern States now believe? 3. What was their chief reason for this? 4. What States withdrew from the Union before the inauguration of Mr. Lincoln? 5. Who was elected President of the new Confederacy? 6. Who Vice-President? 7. For what purpose were Commissioners sent to Washington? 8. With what result? 9. What of the "Peace Congress"? 10. In the midst of these events, what State was admitted? 11. What happened in this excited state of affairs?

III. As soon as ¹*it became evident that the Federal authorities were about to reinforce Fort Sumter,* General Beauregard opened fire on the fort, which, ²*on the morning of the 13th of April, 1861,* after a gallant defense, was surrendered by Major Robert Anderson, the commander of the Federal garrison. Mr. Lincoln ³*immediately called for seventy-five thousand troops,* which was met by the Confederate Government at Montgomery ⁴*by a call*

for volunteers to repel aggressions. Mr. Lincoln's call for troops excited great indignation ⁵in the border Southern States, and four of them passed ordinances of secession. These four were ⁶Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee. They then joined the Confederacy, and the capital of the Confederate States was transferred ⁷to Richmond, in Virginia. Thither troops were rapidly forwarded from the South, while the Northern States as rapidly sent troops to Washington. On the 19th of April, ⁸some Federal troops passing through Baltimore were attacked by the citizens, and several lives were lost. Federal troops now began to enter Virginia from several directions, while the Confederate troops were sent forward to oppose them, and the war commenced in earnest. The Federal successes at Grafton and Philippi were counterbalanced ⁹by their defeat at Big Bethel, and their victories at Rich Mountain, Laurel Hill, and Carriek's Ford were completely overshadowed ¹⁰by the brilliant Confederate triumph at Manassas, in which battle thirty thousand Confederates; under Beauregard and Johnston, totally defeated the Federal army of nearly sixty thousand men, led by General McDowell. The most important Federal successes of this year were ¹¹the capture of the forts at Hatteras Inlet, on the coast of North Carolina, the capture of Port Royal, on the South Carolina coast, and a slight advantage at Dranesville, in Virginia. On the other hand, the Confederates gained victories ¹²at Carnifex Ferry, at the Greenbrier River, at Leesburg on the Potomac, and at Alleghany Summit.

III.—1. Why did Beauregard fire on Fort Sumter? 2. When did the fort surrender? 3. What did Mr. Lincoln do? 4. How was this call met by the Confederate Government? 5. Where did Mr. Lincoln's call excite indignation? 6. Which four passed ordinances of secession and joined the Confederacy? 7. The capital of the Confederacy was moved from Montgomery to what city? 8. What happened on the 19th of April? 9. How were the Federal successes at Grafton and Philippi counterbalanced? 10. How were their victories at Rich Mountain, Laurel Hill, and Carriek's Ford completely overshadowed? 11. What were the most important Federal successes of this year? 12. Where, on the other hand, did the Confederates gain victories?

IV. In the States of Kentucky and Missouri there also occurred important events. The people of both of these States ¹*were divided in their sentiments, some of them siding with the Federal Government and some with the Confederacy*, and some of the bravest soldiers of either army were enlisted from these States. Though both Kentucky and Missouri were claimed by the Southern Confederacy, ²*neither of these States ever actually withdrew from the Union*, and the majority of their population remained steadfast in their attachment to the Federal Government. Still, they both furnished ³*many soldiers* to the Confederacy. The first important conflict in Missouri took place ⁴*at Carthage*, in which ⁵*the Federals were defeated by General Price, commanding Missouri troops, and General McCulloch, in command of troops from Arkansas and Texas*. Price and McCulloch gained a much more decisive victory at ⁶*Oak Hill on the 10th of August, and on the 20th of September General Price captured Lexington, Missouri, with more than three thousand Federal prisoners*. On the ⁷*7th of November, at Belmont, the Confederates, under General Pillow, gained another victory over the Federals, under General Grant*. During the latter part of the year ⁷*the seizure of the Confederate Commissioners Mason and Slidell (who at the time were on board the British steamer Trent) by Captain Wilkes, of the United States steam-frigate San Jacinto, came near involving the Federal Government in a war with Great Britain; but* ⁸*the United States Government disavowed the act of Captain Wilkes, and restored the ambassadors to a British vessel*. Thus war with England was prevented. During this first year of the war the Confederate privateers ⁹*inflicted great damage on the Federal commerce*. When the year closed, the advantage was greatly ¹⁰*on the side of the Confederate States*.

IV.—1. What is said of the people of Kentucky and Missouri? 2. Did either Kentucky or Missouri ever really withdraw from the Union? 3. What did they both furnish to the Confederacy? 4. Where did the first important conflict in Missouri occur? 5. With what result? 6. What other victories were gained by the Confederates in Missouri? 7. What came near involving

- the United States in a war with Great Britain? 8. How was war averted?
9. What about the Confederate privateers during the first year of the war?
10. On whose side was the advantage at the close of the year?

V. In the beginning of 1862 ¹*the Confederates had in the field about three hundred thousand men, while the Federal forces numbered fully eight hundred thousand.* The year began disastrously for the Confederates, and Stonewall Jackson's successes at Bath and Romney were obscured ²*by the defeat of the Southern arms at Fishing Creek, in Kentucky, by the loss of Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, and by the crushing defeat at Fort Donelson, by which the Confederates lost more than nine thousand men and* ³*were obliged to abandon Kentucky and a large part of Tennessee.* Again the Confederates were worsted ⁴*at Elkhorn, or Pea Ridge, in Arkansas, but they gained a victory* ⁵*at Valverde, in the Territory of New Mexico.* On the 6th and 7th of April were fought the great battles of ⁶*Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing.* On the first day ⁷*the Confederates gained a brilliant victory, but lost their leader, General Albert Sidney Johnston;* on the second day ⁸*the Federals, being largely reinforced, had the advantage, though the Confederates succeeded in carrying off most of the spoils captured on the 6th.* ⁹*On the 11th of April the Federals captured Fort Pulaski, near Savannah, Georgia, and on the 12th of April, Fort Macon, on the coast of North Carolina.* During the same month they captured the forts on Island No. 10, in the Mississippi River, and on the 25th of April they captured New Orleans. On the 29th of May, General Beauregard was obliged to retreat from Corinth, in consequence of which ¹⁰*Fort Pillow and Memphis fell into the hands of the Federals.* Beauregard's health failing, he was succeeded by General Bragg. Meanwhile, important events were occurring in Virginia. General McClellan, with an immense army, ¹¹*was advancing upon Richmond by way of the Peninsula, while other large Federal armies were preparing to move upon Richmond from the north and west.* It was while McClellan was preparing to move his army from the neighborhood of Washington to the Peninsula (that part of Virginia lying between the York and

James Rivers) that ¹²*the famous naval battle in Hampton Roads occurred.* In this affair ¹³*the Confederate iron-clad vessel Virginia destroyed the United States vessels Cumberland and Congress, and put the Federal fleet to flight.* The next day ¹⁴*the Virginia was worsted in a combat with the Federal iron-clad Monitor.* When McClellan's army began its advance up the Peninsula, the Confederates, under General Joe Johnston, retired towards Richmond. ¹⁵*Several encounters took place between the Confederate rear-guard and the Federal advance, the most important of which was* ¹⁶*the battle of Williamsburg, in which the Confederates had the advantage.* It being necessary to concentrate as many troops as possible for the defense of Richmond, ¹⁷*Norfolk was abandoned.* On the 15th of May ¹⁸*the Federal iron-clads attacked the Confederate works at Drewry's Bluff, but were repulsed.* On the 31st of May occurred the battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines, by which ¹⁹*McClellan's advance was completely checked.* ²⁰*General Johnston was severely wounded in this battle, and was succeeded by General Robert E. Lee.*

V.—1. What was the comparative strength of the armies in the beginning of 1862? 2. How were Stonewall Jackson's successes at Bath and Romney obscured? 3. What were the Confederates obliged to do in consequence of these defeats? 4. Where were the Confederates again worsted? 5. Where did they gain a victory? 6. What battles were fought on the 6th and 7th of April? 7. What was the result of the first day's battle? 8. What was the result of the second day's battle? 9. What other successes had the Federals in April? 10. What happened in consequence of Beauregard's retreat from Corinth? 11. Meanwhile, what was McClellan doing in Virginia? 12. What occurred about the time that McClellan began to move his army to the Peninsula? 13. What was done by the Confederate iron-clad Virginia? 14. What happened next day? 15. What took place while the Confederates were retiring towards Richmond? 16. Which was the most important of these conflicts? 17. What was done in consequence of the necessity of concentrating troops for the defense of Richmond? 18. What happened on the 15th of May? 19. What was the result of the battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines? 20. What can you say of General Johnston?

VI. Meanwhile, General Stonewall Jackson ¹*had kept the Federal armies that were expected to co-operate with McClellan too*

busy to carry out the part that had been assigned them. His first battle with them was at Kernstown, by which, ²though repulsed, he succeeded in detaining McDowell's army near Washington. After this Jackson moved rapidly up the Shenandoah Valley, defeated Milroy ³at the village of McDowell, then marched back down the Valley, ⁴defeated Banks at Front Royal and Winchester, driving him with his forces completely across the Potomac, and, when pursued by overwhelming forces under Fremont and Shields, passed skillfully between them, repulsed Fremont at Cross Keys, and routed Shields at Port Republic, and, before the Federals could recover from their astonishment, ⁵had disappeared from their front and joined Lee's army at Richmond. There now occurred a series of bloody battles, continuing during six days, the result of which was ⁶a complete Confederate triumph, McClellan's army being driven a distance of thirty miles. McClellan having been defeated, the united armies of Fremont and Shields were placed under the command of ⁷General Pope, and a new advance upon Richmond from the north was commenced. Pope's advance under Banks was met and defeated by Stonewall Jackson ⁸at Cedar Run, and Lee, ⁹no longer fearing McClellan's army, moved rapidly northward, and on the 30th of August totally defeated Pope's army at Manassas, and then crossed the Potomac into Maryland. McClellan's army ¹⁰had now been called northward for the defense of Washington, and, all the Federal forces being united, ¹¹largely outnumbered the Confederates. While a portion of Lee's army delayed the advance of McClellan, Jackson captured ¹²Harper's Ferry, with twelve thousand prisoners. On the 17th of September occurred ¹³the bloody and indecisive battle of Sharpsburg, or Antietam. On the night of the 18th, the Federals having been reinforced, Lee ¹⁴retired into Virginia. The Federals attempted to pursue, but were defeated ¹⁵at Shepherdstown. Soon after this, ¹⁶General Stuart, with eighteen hundred cavalry, made a raid into Pennsylvania, passing entirely around McClellan's army.

VI.—1. Meanwhile, what had General Stonewall Jackson done? 2. What of the battle of Kernstown? 3. Where was Jackson's next victory? 4. What

other victories did he gain? 5. What had Jackson done before the Federals could recover from their astonishment? 6. What was the result of the six days' battles which now occurred? 7. What general now made an advance upon Richmond? 8. Where did Jackson defeat Pope's advance troops under Banks? 9. What did Lee now do? 10. What had been done with McClellan's army? 11. What of the Federal forces after they were united under McClellan? 12. What place did Jackson capture? 13. What happened on the 17th of September? 14. What did Lee do on the night of the 18th? 15. When the Federals attempted to pursue, where were they defeated? 16. What did General Stuart do soon after this?

VII. While these events were occurring in Virginia, the armies in the West had not been idle. The way having first been opened ¹*by the successful cavalry raids of Generals Morgan and Forrest*, General Bragg, ²*with fifty thousand Confederates*, set out from Middle Tennessee for Kentucky, flanking Buell's army, and compelling the Federals to retreat into Kentucky. ³*General Kirby Smith*, with seven thousand Confederates, also moved into Kentucky from East Tennessee. On the 30th of August he gained a brilliant victory ⁴*at Richmond, in Kentucky*, and on the 17th of September ⁵*Bragg captured Mumfordsville, with four thousand prisoners*. The Confederates then moved forward and entered Frankfort, where Bragg ⁶*inaugurated a Provisional Governor*. A few days after this, ⁷*Buell, being heavily reinforced, began to advance against Bragg*, who, ⁸*on account of the defeats of Price and Van Dorn at Iuka and Corinth*, was unable to receive the assistance which he had expected, and was obliged ⁹*to retreat*. At Perryville, General Bragg, finding it necessary to fight a battle to secure his retreat and carry off the rich spoils which he had captured in Kentucky, ¹⁰*turned upon the Federals and defeated them*, after which he retired unmolested into Tennessee. Bragg had failed ¹¹*to hold Kentucky*, but had recovered ¹²*a large part of Middle Tennessee*, and, ¹³*by the capture of Cumberland Gap*, had secured to the Confederates the possession of East Tennessee. Early in November the Federal army near Washington again crossed the Potomac into Virginia, and, under General Burnside, began another advance upon Richmond; but ¹⁴*they were disastrously defeated by*

the Confederates, under General Lee, at Fredericksburg, on the 13th of December. About two months before this battle ¹⁵a Federal force was defeated at Pocotaligo, in South Carolina. In Mississippi, ¹⁶the Federals failed in an attempt to capture Vicksburg, General Grant being compelled to retreat on account of the capture of his supplies at Holly Springs, and General Sherman being disastrously repulsed at Chickasaw Bayou by General Pemberton. On the 31st of December was fought ¹⁷the battle of Murfreesboro', or Stone River, in which ¹⁸the Confederates had the advantage. Two days later, ¹⁹the battle was renewed, and, though the result was indecisive, the Confederates retired to Tullahoma. During this year the Confederate cruisers Florida and Alabama ²⁰did great damage to the commerce of the Federals. The year 1862, which opened with disasters to the Confederates, closed with their arms triumphant in almost every quarter. Towards the close of the year the people of forty-eight counties of Virginia formed a separate State government, and they were admitted into the Union, as ²¹West Virginia, on the 31st of December.

VII.—1. How was the way opened to the Confederates for a march into Kentucky? 2. With how many men did General Bragg march into Kentucky? 3. Who marched into Kentucky from East Tennessee? 4. Where did Smith gain a victory? 5. What happened on the 17th of September? 6. What did Bragg do at Frankfort? 7. What happened a few days after this? 8. Why was Bragg unable to receive the expected assistance? 9. What was Bragg obliged to do? 10. What did Bragg do at Perryville? 11. What had Bragg failed to do? 12. What had he recovered? 13. How had he secured to the Confederates the possession of East Tennessee? 14. What was the result of an advance of the Federals under Burnside in November? 15. What happened about two months before this battle? 16. What happened in Mississippi? 17. What battle was fought on the 31st of December? 18. Who had the advantage? 19. What happened two days later? 20. What did the Confederate cruisers do during this year? 21. What new State was admitted into the Union at the close of this year?

VIII. On the 1st of January, 1863, Mr. Lincoln issued a proclamation emancipating the slaves in all the States that had

succeeded from the Union. Although this measure was in violation of the Constitution, it was justified ²*on the plea of military necessity.* At the beginning of the new year the Federal armies were larger than ever before, while the Confederate armies were smaller. On the 1st of January, 1863, ³*the Confederates, under General Magruder, captured Galveston, in Texas,* but on the 11th of January ⁴*the Federals, under General McClelland, captured Arkansas Post.* On the same day ⁵*the Confederate war-steamer Alabama captured the Federal war-steamer Hatteras near Galveston.* On the 21st of January ⁶*two Confederate gunboats captured a Federal gunboat and a schooner at Sabine Pass.* On the 31st of January ⁷*the small Confederate fleet in Charleston Harbor gained a brilliant victory.* A few days before, ⁸*a Federal fleet of gunboats destroyed the Confederate steamer Nashville near Fort McAllister, not far from Savannah, Georgia.* On the 3d of March ⁹*the Federal fleet was repulsed in an attack upon Fort McAllister.* On the 5th of the same month, General Van Dorn ¹⁰*gained a brilliant victory at Spring Hill, in Middle Tennessee.* On the 6th of April ¹¹*a powerful Federal fleet was disastrously repulsed in an attack on Fort Sumter, in Charleston Harbor.* About the last of the month, General Forrest ¹²*captured Colonel Streight, with a Federal force of about two thousand men, near Rome, Georgia.* About the last of April the Federal army in Virginia, numbering one hundred and thirty-two thousand men and led by General Joseph Hooker, began another advance upon Richmond, but ¹³*they were encountered by General Lee, with only forty-seven thousand men, on the 2d of May, at Chancellorsville, and, after three days' fighting, were overwhelmingly defeated; but the Confederates paid dearly for their triumph in the death of the illustrious* ¹⁴*Stonewall Jackson.*

VIII.—1. What did Mr. Lincoln do on the 1st of January, 1863? 2. On what plea was this unconstitutional measure justified? 3. What happened on the 1st of January, 1863? 4. What happened on the 11th? 5. What victory had the Confederates on the same day? 6. What happened on the 21st of January? 7. What on the 31st? 8. What happened a few days before

this? 9. What happened on the 3d of March? 10. What did General Van Dorn do on the 5th of the same month? 11. What happened on the 6th of April? 12. What did General Forrest do about the last of the month? 13. What was the result of an advance made by the Federal army in Virginia? 14. What great Confederate general was killed in this battle?

IX. Meanwhile, General Grant, in Mississippi, ¹*made six different attempts to approach Vicksburg, but failed in each.* Finally he moved his army down the west bank of the Mississippi to Grand Gulf, ran his transports past the Vicksburg batteries to the same point, and, moving from thence upon the city, ²*defeated Pemberton at Raymond, at Baker's Creek, and at the Big Black.* Pemberton was then closely besieged in Vicksburg by Grant, whose army largely outnumbered the Confederates. On the 19th and on the 22d of May ³*the Federals assaulted the Confederate works, but were repulsed with great loss.* On the 27th of May, General Banks, who had moved up from New Orleans with a large Federal force and was besieging Port Hudson, ⁴*assaulted the Confederate works at that place, but was repulsed.* Assaults on the 10th and 14th of June ⁵*met with a similar result.* On the 22d of June the Confederates, under General Dick Taylor, gained a brilliant victory ⁶*at Brashear City, in Louisiana.* An attempt was made to relieve Vicksburg, ⁷*by sending a part of Bragg's army under General Joseph E. Johnston to operate in the rear of Grant's army, but the force was too small to accomplish anything.*

IX.—1. Meanwhile, what did Grant do in Mississippi? 2. What happened when he advanced upon Vicksburg from Grand Gulf? 3. What happened on the 19th and 22d of May? 4. What did General Banks do at Port Hudson on the 27th of May? 5. What of the assaults on the 10th and 14th of June? 6. Where did the Confederates gain a victory on the 22d of June? 7. How was an attempt made to relieve Vicksburg?

X. Early in June ¹*the Confederate army in Virginia, under Lee, now numbering eighty thousand men, set out on an invasion of Pennsylvania.* ²*At Brandy Station* the Federal cavalry were defeated by General Stuart, and ³*at Winchester and Martinsburg* the Confederates, under Ewell, gained brilliant victories. Lee

crossed the Potomac ⁴*on the 23d of June*, and ⁵*on the 27th* he entered Chambersburg, Pennsylvania. Some of his advanced divisions penetrated the State as far as York and Carlisle, and almost to Harrisburg, the capital. ⁶*At Gettysburg*, Lee encountered the Federal army, under General Meade, numbering nearly one hundred thousand men. On the 1st of July ⁷*the advance corps of the two armies encountered each other, and the Confederates were victorious, capturing Gettysburg and driving the Federals to some heights beyond the town.* On the 2d ⁸*the Confederates assailed this position, and captured some of the Federal works.* On the 3d ⁹*they assailed the Federal centre, and, after penetrating their works, were repulsed, and retired to the position from which they had made the attack.* After this repulse Lee ¹⁰*returned to Virginia.* On the same day that Lee began his retreat from Gettysburg, ¹¹*Vicksburg surrendered to General Grant, with twenty-seven thousand Confederate prisoners and a vast quantity of cannon.* On the 9th of July ¹²*the Confederate garrison of six thousand at Port Hudson surrendered to General Banks.* On the 18th of July the Federals, under General Strong, were defeated ¹³*in an attack on Fort Wagner, near Charleston, in South Carolina.* During this month occurred General Morgan's raid into Ohio, which resulted ¹⁴*in his capture and the dispersion of his forces.* He afterwards escaped and rejoined the Confederates. Towards the close of the summer, Bragg, whose army had been weakened by the transfer of troops to Mississippi, was compelled ¹⁵*to retreat before the advance of General Rosecrans until he had retired from Chattanooga, when, being reinforced by a part of General Longstreet's corps from Lee's army, ¹⁶he turned upon Rosecrans at Chickamauga, in Georgia, and gained one of the most brilliant victories of the war.* He pursued the Federals to Chattanooga, and prepared to besiege them there. A few days before this battle the Confederates gained ¹⁷*a victory at Sabine Pass, on the Texas coast, over vastly superior forces.* While Bragg was keeping the Federal army hemmed in at Chattanooga, Longstreet ¹⁸*moved with his corps against General Burnside, who*

had captured Cumberland Gap and Knoxville. Longstreet defeated the Federals ¹⁹ *on the 20th of October, and again on the 6th of November, forcing Burnside into his fortifications at Knoxville, which place the Confederates invested* ²⁰ *on the 17th of November. The Federal army at Chattanooga, having been reinforced by two corps from Virginia and by Sherman's army from Mississippi, now greatly outnumbered the Confederates under Bragg. On the 24th of November,* ²¹ *General Hooker captured the Confederate works on Lookout Mountain, and on the next day General Grant defeated Bragg's army at Missionary Ridge. General Hooker was sent in pursuit of the retreating Confederates, but was repulsed* ²² *at Ringgold, in Georgia, by a Confederate division under General Cleburne, and the pursuit was checked. General Grant now sent* ²³ *Sherman to the relief of Knoxville. Longstreet, hearing of his approach,* ²⁴ *assaulted the Federal position, but was repulsed, and retreated towards Virginia. At Strawberry Plains* ²⁵ *he defeated a Federal force which attempted to pursue him. No important events occurred in Virginia until the next spring. At the close of 1863 the advantage was undoubtedly on the side of the Federals, though their successes were partially obscured by Confederate victories.*

X.—1. What happened in Virginia early in June? 2. Where were the Federal cavalry defeated? 3. Where did the Confederates gain brilliant victories? 4. When did Lee cross the Potomac? 5. When did he enter Pennsylvania? 6. Where did he encounter the Federal army under Meade? 7. What happened on the 1st of July? 8. What happened on the 2d? 9. What happened on the 3d? 10. What did Lee do after this repulse? 11. What happened on the same day that Lee began his retreat from Gettysburg? 12. What happened on the 9th of July? 13. Where were the Federals disastrously defeated on the 18th of July? 14. In what did Morgan's raid into Ohio result? 15. Towards the close of the summer, what was Bragg obliged to do? 16. What did he do after being reinforced by Longstreet? 17. What victory did the Confederates gain a few days before this battle? 18. While Bragg was keeping the Federal army hemmed in at Chattanooga, what did Longstreet do? 19. When did Longstreet defeat the Federals? 20. When did Longstreet invest Knoxville? 21. What happened after the Federal army at Chattanooga had been reinforced? 22. Where was Hooker repulsed and the pursuit of the Confederates checked? 23. Whom did Grant send to the

relief of Knoxville? 24. What did Longstreet do on hearing of Sherman's approach? 25. What happened at Strawberry Plains?

XI. At the beginning of 1864 ¹*the Federal armies numbered one million men, while the Confederate armies numbered not more than two hundred and fifty thousand.* Active operations commenced in February, ²*by the invasion of Florida by a Federal army, under General Seymour.* This army was defeated ³*at Olustee, or Ocean Pond, by the Confederates under Generals Colquitt and Finnegan.* On the 22d of the same month the Confederate General Forrest gained a victory over General Grierson at Okalona, in Mississippi, the most important result of which was that ⁴*General Sherman was obliged to abandon his attempt on Mobile and return to Vicksburg.* On the 25th of February, at Rocky Face Ridge, near Dalton, Georgia, ⁵*a considerable Federal force attacked the Confederate works, but was repulsed.* In the early part of April, ⁶*General Banks, with a large Federal army, was completely defeated in Louisiana by General Dick Taylor, and General Steele was driven back into Arkansas by General Kirby Smith.* On the 10th of April, ⁷*Fort Pillow, in Tennessee, was captured by the Confederates under General Forrest, and on the 20th, ⁸General Hoke captured Plymouth, in North Carolina, with its garrison of three thousand Federals.* About the same time the Confederates defeated ⁹*the Federal cavalry raids of Dahlgren and Kilpatrick in Virginia, Dahlgren being killed.* Two grand campaigns for the summer were now planned by the Federals, ¹⁰*one against Richmond in Virginia, the other against Atlanta, in Georgia.*

XI.—1. What was the comparative size of the armies at the beginning of 1864? 2. How did active operations commence? 3. Where was this army defeated? 4. What was the most important result of a victory gained by Forrest over the Federals under Grierson? 5. What happened on the 25th of February? 6. What happened in the early part of April? 7. What fort was captured by Forrest on the 10th of April? 8. What other victory did the Confederates gain on the 20th of April? 9. What cavalry raids did the Confederates defeat about the same time? 10. What two grand campaigns were now planned by the Federals?

XII. On the 3d of May, ¹*General Grant, with one hundred and forty thousand men, began to cross the Rapidan.* ²*General Lee had but fifty-two thousand men with whom to oppose this vast army, but he met them boldly and confidently, and inflicted a series of bloody repulses on the Federals* ³*in the Wilderness, at Spottsylvania Court-House, at the crossing of the North Anna, and finally at Cold Harbor.* ⁴*The Federals lost in these battles sixty thousand men, while the Confederates lost but eighteen thousand; but the Federal losses were supplied by reinforcements, while Lee had few reinforcements to expect. The generals who were to co-operate with Grant* ⁵*succeeded no better than he did; for Crook and Sigel were routed by Breckinridge, while General Butler, who attempted to capture Petersburg, was completely defeated by General Beauregard, with a force not more than half as numerous.* Just before the battle of Cold Harbor the great Confederate cavalry leader ⁶*Stuart* was killed. Soon after the battle of Cold Harbor, General Sheridan was defeated near Gordonsville by ⁷*General Wade Hampton*, who had succeeded Stuart in command of Lee's cavalry. On the 18th of June, General Hunter was defeated by the Confederate General Early, ⁸*at Lynchburg.* General Grant, having failed in his attempts on Richmond, now attempted ⁹*to surprise Petersburg, but was foiled by Lee, who repulsed all his attacks. His cavalry,* ¹⁰*while raiding to the rear of Lee's army, was also defeated with great loss.*

XII.—1. What happened on the 3d of May? 2. What of General Lee? 3. Where did he inflict bloody repulses on the Federals? 4. What were the losses in these battles? 5. What of the generals who were to co-operate with Grant? 6. What great Confederate cavalry leader was killed just before the battle of Cold Harbor? 7. By whom was General Sheridan defeated soon after the battle of Cold Harbor? 8. Where did General Early defeat General Hunter on the 18th of June? 9. What did Grant now attempt? 10. What of his cavalry?

XIII. The campaign in Georgia commenced ¹*on the 4th of May.* Sherman by his overwhelming numbers ²*flanked General Joseph E. Johnston out of Dalton, and also out of other positions*

where he wished to make a stand, until the Confederates had retired to the neighborhood of Marietta. During these movements occurred ³the battle of Resaca, in which the Confederates had the advantage, though Sherman by his superior numbers was able to flank Johnston out of position. The Confederates gained victories ⁴at New Hope Church on the 25th and 27th of May, but on the 28th ⁵two brigades of Bate's division were repulsed in an assault on some Federal works at Dallas. On the 27th of June occurred ⁶the battle of Kenesaw Mountain, in which the Federals were repulsed with great loss. A few weeks before this battle, ⁷General Forrest gained a brilliant victory at Guntown, in Mississippi. On the 2d of July, General Johnston, having ascertained that the Federals were about to get between his army and Atlanta, ⁸moved back to the Chattahoochee, which river he afterwards crossed. He now prepared to fight a battle in which he hoped to defeat the army of Sherman and end the campaign by one decisive blow. Meanwhile, important events were occurring in Virginia and Maryland. ⁹General Early, with about thirteen thousand Confederates, moved down the Valley, and, entering Maryland, defeated General Wallace at Monocacy, and then advanced upon Washington, which city was saved from capture by the arrival of two corps from Grant's army. General Early afterwards ¹⁰defeated General Crook at Martinsburg, and McCausland ¹¹entered Pennsylvania and captured Carlisle and Chambersburg, which latter town he burned. On the 30th of July occurred ¹²the celebrated "Mine Explosion," on which occasion Grant's army met with a severe repulse.

XIII.—1. When did the campaign in Georgia commence? 2. What did Sherman do by means of his overwhelming numbers? 3. What occurred during these movements? 4. Where did Johnston gain victories? 5. What happened on the 28th of May? 6. What occurred on the 27th of June? 7. What happened a few weeks before this battle? 8. What did Johnston do when he ascertained that the Federals were about to get between his army and Atlanta? 9. Meanwhile, what important events occurred in Virginia and Maryland? 10. What did Early afterwards do? 11. What did General McCausland do? 12. What occurred on the 30th of June?

XIV. All this time, stirring events were occurring in Georgia. General Johnston, in the midst of his preparations for battle, was superseded ¹by General John B. Hood, who on the 20th of July ²attacked Sherman at Peach-Tree Creek and was repulsed. On the 22d ³he again attacked, and gained a partial success. Soon after this ⁴a cavalry expedition of nine thousand men sent out by General Sherman was defeated, with the loss of three thousand men. On the 28th of July, ⁵Hood again assaulted Sherman's lines, but was repulsed. On the 5th of August the Federals assaulted the Confederate lines ⁶at Utoy Creek, near Atlanta, but were defeated. Between the 5th and 23d of August ⁷the Federal fleet under Farragut, assisted by a land-force, destroyed the small Confederate fleet in Mobile Bay and captured the forts which defended the harbor. The next Federal success was ⁸the capture of Atlanta, which occurred on the 2d of September, after Hood's failure to defeat Sherman's flanking force at Jonesboro'. In Virginia, ⁹all of Grant's attempts to break Lee's lines failed, and at Ream's Station General Hancock was defeated by the Confederates, under General A. P. Hill. On the 19th of September, ¹⁰General Sheridan, with forty thousand men, defeated the Confederates, under Early, numbering thirteen thousand, at Winchester, and again, on the ¹¹22d of September, at Fisher's Hill. On the 19th of October, at Cedar Creek, ¹²General Early surprised and routed the Federal army during Sheridan's absence, but on the afternoon of the same day the Federals returned under Sheridan and routed the Confederates in turn.

XIV.—1. By whom was General Johnston succeeded in the midst of his preparations for a final battle? 2. What did Hood do on the 20th of July? 3. What did he do on the 22d? 4. What happened soon after this? 5. What happened on the 28th of July? 6. Where were the Federals defeated on the 5th of August? 7. What happened between the 5th and 23d of August? 8. What was the next Federal success? 9. What of operations in Virginia? 10. What happened on the 19th of September? 11. When did Sheridan again defeat Early? 12. What happened on the 19th of October, at Cedar Creek?

XV. ¹In November, General Hood began his Tennessee cam-

paign. On the 1st of November he entered the State of Tennessee, and on the 1st of December ²*fought the battle of Franklin, gaining a victory, but at a terrible sacrifice of lives, the brave General Cleburne being among the slain.* He then advanced to Nashville, where, on the 15th and 16th of December, ³*he was totally overthrown by General Thomas.* Since Hood's march into Tennessee had left Georgia unprotected, Sherman, ⁴*after burning Atlanta, marched, unopposed, through the State, and on the 20th of December entered Savannah.* On the 24th and 25th of December a Federal fleet was repulsed ⁵*in an attack on Fort Fisher, on the North Carolina coast.* In the fall of 1864 occurred a Presidential election in the United States. ⁶*Mr. Lincoln was re-elected President, and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was chosen Vice-President.* Their opponents were ⁷*General George B. McClellan, of the Federal army, for President, and George H. Pendleton, of Ohio, for Vice-President.* Another important event of the year was ⁸*the admission of Nevada into the Union as a State.*

XV.—1. When did General Hood begin his Tennessee campaign? 2. What did he do on the 1st of December? 3. What happened at Nashville on the 15th and 16th of December? 4. Since Georgia had been left unprotected, what did Sherman do? 5. Where was a Federal fleet repulsed on the 24th and 25th of December? 6. What was the result of the Presidential election held in the United States in the fall of 1864? 7. Who were the opponents of Lincoln and Johnson? 8. What was another important event of the year 1864?

XVI. At the beginning of 1865 ¹*the Federal forces numbered more than one million men, and the Confederates barely one hundred and fifty thousand.* On the 15th of January, ²*Fort Fisher was captured by the Federals, under General Terry.* ³*An attempt made early in February to end the war by negotiation failed.* On the 6th of February, ⁴*Grant received a bloody repulse at Hatcher's Run while attempting to turn Lee's right.* In the first part of the same month, Sherman ⁵*commenced his march through South Carolina, with sixty thousand men.* On his march through the State he sent a cavalry force under Kilpatrick to capture Graniteville

and Augusta, but ⁶ *Kilpatrick was defeated by General Wheeler at Aiken, and the expedition proved a failure.* Sherman's advance caused ⁷ *the evacuation of Charleston and Columbia, which latter* ⁸ *city was almost destroyed by fire during the stay of the Federal troops.* When Sherman reached North Carolina, he was confronted ⁹ *by all the troops that could be gathered together to oppose him (less than twenty thousand men), some of them being from the Army of Tennessee.* These were now under the command of ¹⁰ *General Joseph E. Johnston.* A part of these forces, under General Bragg, gained a victory ¹¹ *at Kinston on the 8th of March.* On the 16th, ¹² *General Hardee fought a bloody but indecisive battle against a part of Sherman's army at Averysboro', and on the 19th and 20th* ¹³ *the whole Confederate force, under Johnston, gained a partial success at Bentonville; but they were unable to prevent the advance of Sherman's large army.* On the 25th of March, ¹⁴ *General John B. Gordon, commanding a corps of Lee's army, attacked Grant's lines, and captured Fort Steadman, with many prisoners and guns, but, not being properly supported, was obliged to retreat, with great loss.* Lee had now ¹⁵ *only thirty-three thousand men with whom to oppose Grant's army of nearly two hundred thousand, which had been strengthened* ¹⁶ *by the arrival of Sheridan from the Shenandoah Valley.* On the 31st of March, ¹⁷ *General Sheridan was defeated at Dinwiddie Court-House by General Pickett, but on the next day,* ¹⁸ *with an overwhelming force, he utterly defeated Pickett's small division.* On the 2d of April, Grant succeeded ¹⁹ *in making a breach in Lee's lines at Petersburg, and Lee on that night* ²⁰ *abandoned that city and Richmond, to save his army of only twenty-five thousand men from capture.* Grant ²¹ *pursued, and on the 9th of April, with one hundred and eighty thousand men, succeeded in surrounding Lee's army (of which* ²² *only eight thousand men were able to bear arms) at Appomattox Court-House.* Lee was now obliged ²³ *to surrender.* The terms accorded him ²⁴ *were liberal and generous.* A further prosecution of the war on the part of the Confederates was hopeless. ²⁵ *Terms of pacification were arranged between Generals Sherman*

and Johnston; but ²⁶ *President Lincoln had been assassinated a few days before, and the people of the North were not disposed to grant such favorable terms as those agreed upon between Sherman and Johnston.* On the 26th of April, ²⁷ *General Johnston surrendered all the troops in his department.* This was followed ²⁸ *by the surrender of all the Confederate armies.* On the 29th of May, Andrew Johnson, who on the death of Mr. Lincoln became President, ²⁹ *issued a proclamation announcing the end of the war, and offering amnesty to all who had sided with the Confederacy, except certain classes.* Some of the civil officers of the Confederacy fled the country. ³⁰ *President Davis was captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe, but after about two years was released.* Vice-President Stephens ³¹ *was confined at Fort Warren, near Boston, but was soon released.*

XVI.—1. State the comparative strength of the armies at the beginning of 1865. 2. What happened on the 15th of January? 3. What of an attempt made in February to end the war by negotiation? 4. What happened on the 6th of February? 5. What did Sherman do in the first part of the same month? 6. What was the fate of a cavalry expedition sent by General Sherman against Graniteville and Augusta? 7. What did Sherman's advance cause? 8. What happened to the city of Columbia during the stay of the Federal troops? 9. By what was Sherman confronted when he reached North Carolina? 10. Who commanded these? 11. Where did General Bragg gain a victory? 12. What happened on the 16th of March? 13. What happened on the 19th and 20th? 14. What happened on the 25th of March, near Petersburg? 15. How many men had Lee with whom to oppose Grant's army of nearly two hundred thousand? 16. How had Grant been strengthened? 17. What happened on the 31st of March? 18. What happened next day? 19. What did Grant succeed in doing on the 2d of April? 20. What did Lee do on that night? 21. What did Grant do? 22. How many of Lee's men were able to bear arms at this time? 23. What was Lee now obliged to do? 24. What of the terms accorded him? 25. What were now arranged between Generals Sherman and Johnston? 26. Why were these terms rejected by the United States Government? 27. What happened on the 26th of April? 28. By what was this followed? 29. What did Andrew Johnson, the new President, do on the 29th of May? 30. What can you say of President Davis? 31. What of Vice-President Stephens?

XVII. The most important event during Johnson's adminis-

tration was ¹*the reconstruction of the Southern States*. On this question there arose ²*a violent quarrel between the President and the "Radicals" in Congress*. ³*The "Radicals" carried their point, and passed the infamous "Reconstruction Measures," which have done more to keep up the bitterness between the two great sections of our country than the four years of civil war*. By these measures ⁴*unlimited suffrage was conferred upon the negroes, and thousands of the white race were disfranchised, and* ⁵*the Federal Government, by usurping powers which did not belong to it, forced the Southern States to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution*. In the fall of 1868 occurred a Presidential election. ⁶*General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, the candidates of the Republican party, were elected to the offices of President and Vice-President over their Democratic competitors, Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Francis P. Blair, of Missouri*. Other important measures of Johnson's administration were ⁸*the admission of Nebraska as a State, and the purchase of Alaska*. In the fall of 1870 ⁹*all the Southern States were restored to their positions in the Federal Union*. The last so restored was ¹⁰*Georgia*. One of the most important events of Grant's first term was ¹¹*the adoption of the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which, like the Fourteenth, was carried through by usurpation and force, and not by the free will of the States*. On the 12th of October, 1870, ¹²*Robert E. Lee, the illustrious leader of the Southern armies, died at Lexington, in Virginia*. He was at the time of his death ¹³*President of Washington College, which has since been named the Washington Lee University*. No purer or nobler patriot ever lived. In the fall of 1872, ¹⁴*General Grant was re-elected President, with Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President*. Soon after this occurred ¹⁵*the death of Horace Greeley, a celebrated journalist of New York, and the candidate of the Democrats and Liberal Republicans for the office of President in the election of 1872*.

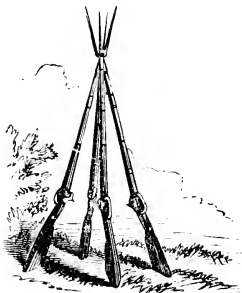
XVII.—1. What was the most important event during Johnson's administration? 2. On this question what arose? 3. With what result? 4. What

was done by these measures? 5. How was the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution ratified? 6. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1868? 7. Who were the Democratic candidates? 8. What were other important measures of Johnston's administration? 9. What happened in the fall of 1870? 10. Which was the last of the seceded States restored to the Union? 11. What was one of the most important events of Grant's first term? 12. What happened on the 12th of October, 1870? 13. What was he at the time of his death? 14. What was the result of the Presidential election of 1872. 15. What occurred soon after the election?

CONCLUDING REMARKS.

WE have now followed the history of the United States from the first settlements to the present time. We have seen the feeble Colonies grow strong enough to shake off the yoke of the mother-country and form for themselves a Federal Union of co-equal sovereign States. Under the Union thus formed, the States grew rapidly in population, power, and importance, and, whether in peace or war they commanded the admiration of friends and foes. The extent of their territory was greatly enlarged, and many new States were added to the Union. In 1860 the population, which at the close of the War of Independence numbered only three millions, had increased to upwards of thirty millions, and in the vast region which at the beginning of the present century was a wilderness, inhabited only by savage tribes, were great and flourishing States. The States were united under a Constitution, which secured to each perfect control over its own affairs, while to the Federal Government was assigned its proper sphere, in which it was supreme, but outside of which it had no power. When the Presidential election of 1860 resulted in bringing into power a sectional party, whose principles were dangerous to the rights of the States, most of the Southern States withdrew from the Union and formed a Confederacy of their own. The majority of the

people of the North denied the right of a State to withdraw from the Union, and made war upon the seceded States to compel their return. The people of the North regarded the Union as the greatest of blessings, and their soldiers fought bravely for its preservation. The people of the South believed that the preservation of the rights of the States was more important than the Union, and that without the preservation of those rights there was no security for Constitutional liberty, and the soldiers of the Southern Confederacy fought with heroic valor for State Rights. The soldier of the North and the soldier of the South were alike patriots, fighting each for what he deemed the righteous cause. If the Northerner who fought for the Union need feel no shame for the part which he acted, neither is there any need for the Southerner to blush for having espoused the cause of State sovereignty. It is gratifying to know that the bitterness engendered by the war between the States is gradually passing away. The Southern people have ever loved the Union as it was, when first formed by the patriots of the Revolution; and when the Government shall pass out of the hands of those who have disregarded the Constitution and the rights of the States thereunder, then the bitterness of the past will be remembered no more, and the men of the North and of the South will be brethren again. Every patriot should pray that God may speed that happy time.







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 448 182 8